



Department
for Transport

Specification for the Reinstatement of Openings in Highways Fourth edition



27 February 2019

The Department for Transport has actively considered the needs of blind and partially sighted people in accessing this document. The text will be made available in full on the Department's website. The text may be freely downloaded and translated by individuals or organisations for conversion into other accessible formats. If you have other needs in this regard, please contact the Department.

Department for Transport
Great Minster House
33 Horseferry Road
London SW1P 4DR
Telephone 0300 330 3000
Website www.gov.uk/dft
General enquiries: <https://forms.dft.gov.uk>



© Crown copyright 2019

Copyright in the typographical arrangement rests with the Crown.

You may re-use this information (not including logos or third-party material) free of charge in any format or medium, under the terms of the Open Government Licence. To view this licence, visit <http://www.nationalarchives.gov.uk/doc/open-government-licence/version/3/> or write to the Information Policy Team, The National Archives, Kew, London TW9 4DU, or e-mail: psi@nationalarchives.gsi.gov.uk

Where we have identified any third-party copyright information you will need to obtain permission from the copyright holders concerned.

Contents

Foreword	9
Definitions	10
S0 Preamble	15
S0.1 General	15
S0.2 Outline of the specification	15
S0.3 Outline of the appendices	15
S0.4 Outline of the Notes for Guidance	16
S0.5 Using the specification and appendices	16
S1 Operational principles	18
S1.1 General	18
S1.2 Guarantee period	18
S1.3 Road categories	19
S1.4 Footway, footpath and cycle track categories	19
S1.5 Excavation and trench categories	20
S1.6 Alternative options	20
S1.7 Immediate works	21
S1.8 Apparatus within road, footway, footpath and cycle track structures	21
S1.9 Geosynthetic materials, geotextiles and reinforcement grids	22
S1.10 Trees	22
S1.11 Conciliation and arbitration	22
S2 Performance requirements	23
S2.1 General	23
S2.2 Surface profile	25
S2.3 Fixed features	27
S2.4 Surface regularity	30
S2.5 Structural integrity	31
S2.6 Skid resistance	33
S2.7 Sampling and testing	37
S2.8 Undertaker's works in deteriorated or distressed areas	38
S3 Excavation	39

S3.1	Breaking the surface	39
S3.2	Excavation	39
S3.3	Excavated material	40
S3.4	Side support	40
S3.5	Drainage	40
S3.6	Shallow or aborted excavations	40
S3.7	Trenchless pipelaying	41
S4	Surround to apparatus	42
S4.1	General	42
S5	Backfill	43
S5.1	Backfill material classification	43
S5.2	Alternative reinstatement materials (ARMs)	44
S5.3	Additional requirements	44
S6	Flexible and composite roads	46
S6.1	Reinstatement methods	46
S6.2	Sub-base reinstatement	47
S6.3	Base reinstatement	47
S6.4	Surface reinstatement	49
S6.5	Small excavations, narrow trenches and access chamber covers	53
S6.6	Micro trenching	55
S6.7	Large diameter cores	58
S6.8	Base and edge preparation	61
S6.9	Tolerances	68
S7	Rigid and modular roads	69
S7.1	Reinstatement methods	69
S7.2	Sub-base reinstatement	70
S7.3	Concrete road slab reinstatement	70
S7.4	Large diameter cores	72
S7.5	Edge support and preparation	72
S7.6	Reinforcement	75
S7.7	Overlays	75
S7.8	Modular roads	75
S7.9	Tolerances	76
S8	Footways, footpaths and cycle tracks	77
S8.1	Reinstatement methods	77
S8.2	Sub-base reinstatement	78

S8.3	Surface reinstatement	79
S8.4	Micro trenching	81
S8.5	Large diameter cores	81
S8.6	Edge requirements	81
S8.7	Vehicular trafficking	83
S8.8	Tolerances	83
S9	Verges and unmade ground	84
S9.1	General	84
S9.2	Adjacent road structures	84
S9.3	Cultivated areas	85
S9.4	Grassed areas	85
S9.5	Verges, ditches and drainage courses	85
S10	Compaction requirements	86
S10.1	Introduction	86
S10.2	Compaction of materials	86
S10.3	Equipment operation and restrictions	88
S11	Ancillary activities	91
S11.1	Traffic signs, road markings, studs and verge markers	91
S11.2	Street furniture and special features	93
S11.3	Traffic sensors, etc.	93
S11.4	Water-related matters	93
S11.5	Ironwork and apparatus	94
S11.6	Test holes	97
S12	Remedial works	98
S12.1	General	98
S12.2	Safety requirements	98
S12.3	Repair of cracking	98
S12.4	Repair of settlement beyond reinstatement limits	100
S12.5	Repair of other significant defects	100
Appendix A1		101
	Backfill materials	101
A1.1	Class A – Graded granular materials	101
A1.2	Class B – Granular materials	101
A1.3	Class C – Cohesive/granular materials	101
A1.4	Class D – Cohesive materials	101
A1.5	Class E – Unacceptable materials	102

A1.6	Field identification tests	102
Appendix A2		106
	Key to materials	106
A2.0	Introduction	106
A2.1	Hot rolled asphalt (HRA) mixtures	106
A2.2	Stone mastic asphalt (SMA) mixtures	109
A2.3	Asphalt concrete mixtures	110
A2.4	Cold-lay surfacing materials	111
A2.5	Flowable materials	112
A2.6	Reinstatement materials for micro trenches	114
A2.7	Structural layer thickness tolerances	116
A2.8	Compacted lift thickness	117
A2.9	Bituminous laying temperatures	119
A2.10	Identification of structural layers	120
A2.11	Key to materials	124
A2.12	Key to reinstatement methods	126
A2.13	Summarised selection process for hot lay flexible materials	128
Appendix A3		132
Appendix A4		138
Appendix A5		144
Appendix A6		147
Appendix A7		150
Appendix A8		154
	Compaction requirements	154
A8.1	Granular, cohesive and cement bound materials	154
A8.2	Chalk materials	156
A8.3	Bituminous mixtures	157
Appendix A9		158
	Alternative reinstatement materials (ARMs) and alternative technologies (ATs)	158
A9.1	Introduction	158
A9.2	General requirements for ARMs and ATs	160
A9.3	Structural materials for reinstatements (SMRs)	160
A9.4	Treated materials for fills (TMFs)	162
A9.5	Outline scheme for approval trials	164
Appendix A10		170
	Additional standard materials	170

A10.0	General	170
A10.1	Modified Type 1 Unbound Mixture (0/20)	170
A10.2	Hydraulically bound materials (HBMs)	172
Appendix A11		180
	Product Equivalence	180
Appendix A12		182
	Reinstatement of modular surface layers	182
A12.1	Interim reinstatement	182
A12.2	Permanent reinstatement	182
A12.3	Provision of replacement modules	185
A12.4	Joint inspections and recovery of costs	185
Notes for Guidance		188
NG1 Operational principles		189
NG1.1	General	189
NG1.2	Guarantee period	189
NG1.3	Road categories	190
NG1.6	Alternative options	192
NG1.7	Immediate works	194
NG1.8	Apparatus within the road structure	194
NG1.9	Geosynthetic materials, geotextiles and reinforcement grids	194
NG1.10	Trees	195
NG2 Performance requirements		197
NG3 Excavation		201
NG3.1	Breaking the surface	201
NG3.2	Excavation	201
NG4 Surround to apparatus		202
NG4.1	General	202
NG5 Backfill		203
NG5.1	Backfill material classification	203
NG6 Flexible and composite roads		205
NG7 Rigid and modular roads		220
NG7.1	Reinstatement methods	220
NG7.3	Concrete road slab reinstatement	220
NG7.5	Edge support and preparation	221
NG7.8	Modular roads	221
NG8 Footways, footpaths and cycle tracks		222

NG8.3	Surface reinstatement	222
NG9	Verges and unmade ground	224
NG10	Compaction requirements	225
NG10.1	Introduction	225
NG10.2	Compaction of materials	225
NG10.3	Equipment operation and restrictions	227
NG11	Ancillary activities	231
NG11.1	Traffic signs, road markings, studs and verge markers	231
NG11.2	Street furniture and special features	231
NG11.3	Traffic sensors etc.	231
NG11.4	Water-related matters	231
NG11.5	Ironwork and apparatus	232
NGA2	Key to materials	233
NGA2.0	Introduction	233
NGA2.1	Hot rolled asphalt (HRA) mixtures	233
NGA2.2	Stone mastic asphalt (SMA) mixtures	233
NGA2.3	Asphalt concrete mixtures	235
NGA2.7	Structural layer thickness tolerances	236
NGA8	Compaction requirements	237
NGA9	Alternative reinstatement materials (ARMs) and alternative technologies (ATs)	238
NGA9.1	Introduction	238
NGA9.2	General requirements for ARMs and ATs	239
NGA9.5	Outline scheme for the approval trials	240
NGA10	Additional standard materials	245
NGA10.0	General	245
NGA10.2	Hydraulically bound materials (HBMs)	245
NGA12	Reinstatement of modular surfaces	247
NGA12.1	General	247
NGA12.2	Examples of cement or concrete infills	247
NGA12.3	Examples of reinstatement of modular patterns	247

Foreword

Our local road network and the way we operate it has a direct impact on everyone's lives. Whilst the primary purpose of our highways is to facilitate safe and convenient travel for all, they also serve an important function in accommodating the essential services on which we all rely - water, gas, electricity and telecommunications.

To make sure these services operate reliably, utility companies must, from time to time, maintain, repair and install apparatus under our roads. Given the impact these works can have on the travelling public, it is important that they are completed as quickly and efficiently as possible. At the same time, utilities have to reinstate the roads to certain standards to ensure they do not shorten their life or create uneven running surfaces.

This statutory code of practice, published under section 71 of the New Roads and Street Works Act 1991, is key to achieving these aims. The previous edition was last updated in April 2010 and much has changed since then. Apart from issues that have arisen over its interpretation, many innovations in reinstatement techniques and materials have been introduced that were not covered.

The 4th edition is intended to address these issues and bring the document up to date. It supports innovation and allows new techniques and materials to be used. It should help reduce the time taken to carry out street works and make it easier for utilities to get their reinstatements right first time, and so avoid return site visits. It should also improve the quality and durability of reinstatements, and help to protect this vital national asset.

We would especially like to thank members of the SROH working party (a Highway Authorities and Utilities Committee sub-group) for the considerable contribution they made in developing this edition. Their advice was invaluable in helping us to identify the issues to be addressed and in suggesting ways to resolve them.

We would also like to thank the wider group of experts from across this sector for their input, advice and contributions to the new SROH, and AECOM/Arup who led on the update of this document and delivered a technical specification that will support and deliver our aims for high quality and well-managed street works.

This version of the Code replaces the third edition in England.

Definitions

AAV	Aggregate Abrasion Value - the standard measure of an aggregate's resistance to abrasion.
Authority	The authority as defined in the Act.
Bond coat	Proprietary materials certified by a Product Acceptance Scheme, generally formulated to provide cohesion between bituminous layers.
CBGM base	Cement bound granular mixture – a mixture of controlled graded aggregate using cement that sets and hardens by hydraulic reaction. This is a specific type of hydraulically bound material (HBM) and is suitable for use as a base layer in composite roads, footways, footpaths and cycle tracks.
CBR	Californian bearing ratio - a penetration test for the mechanical strength of soils and granular materials.
Composite footway, footpath or cycle track construction	A pavement comprising lean mix concrete or other hydraulically bound material (including cement bound granular mixtures) overlaid with a bituminous surface course or a bituminous surface and binder course.
Composite road construction	A pavement comprising lean mix concrete, CBGM base or some other hydraulically bound granular material with a bituminous overlay of 100 mm or more. Where the bituminous overlay is less than 100 mm or there is no bituminous overlay, the pavement is considered rigid.
Cut-back	See 'stepped joint'.
Cycle track	A way constituting or comprised in a highway, being a way over which the public have a right of way on pedal cycles only, with or without a right of way on foot.

Deep opening	Any excavation where the depth of cover over the apparatus is greater than 1.5 m, but not including trenches with a depth of cover greater than 1.5 m over intermittent lengths of less than 5 m.
DMRB	Design Manual for Roads and Bridges.
Emergency works	Works required to prevent the occurrence of circumstances likely to cause danger to persons or property. See s52 of the Act for the formal definition.
FCR	Foamed Concrete for Reinstatements.
Flexible construction	A structure where the base comprises a bituminous or granular material, or a combination thereof.
Footpath	A way over which the public has a right of way on foot only, not being a footway.
Footway	A way comprised in a highway, which also comprises a carriageway, being a way over which the public has a right of way on foot only.
Geosynthetic materials	A generic term describing a product at least one of whose materials components is made from a synthetic or natural polymer in the form of a sheet or a 3D structure, and used in contact with soil and/or other materials in geotechnical and civil engineering applications.
HBM	Hydraulically bound material – material comprising a mixture of soil and/or graded granular material with hydraulic binder and water that sets and hardens by hydraulic reaction.
Immediate reinstatement	Works comprising the orderly replacement of excavated material, reasonably compacted to finished surface level, usually with a cold-lay surfacing. This technique is used when it becomes necessary to temporarily reinstate an excavation to permit immediate trafficking.
Interim reinstatement	The orderly placement and proper compaction of reinstatement layers to finished surface level, including any temporary materials.
Intervention	Repair to a compliant condition of a reinstatement that does not comply with this Code.

LA	Los Angeles abrasion value – a measure of an aggregate's resistance to abrasion.
Large diameter core	A core over 150 mm in diameter.
Major projects	Standard works that have been identified specifically in the undertaker's annual operating programme or which, if not specifically identified in that programme, are normally planned at least 6 months in advance of works commencing.
MCHW	Manual of Contract Documents for Highway Works.
Micro trench	A trench up to 60 mm wide and over 1 m long.
Modular construction	A structure where the surface comprises setts, concrete blocks, brick pavers or paving slabs etc. laid on an appropriate sub-construction.
msa	Million standard axles – based on the expected traffic to be carried over 20 years. See S1.3.
Narrow trench	A trench over 60 mm and up to 300 mm wide and over 1 m long.
NRSWA	See "The Act".
Other openings	Any excavation wider than 300 mm with a surface area over 2 m ² .
Pen	The penetration grade of a bituminous binder.
Permanent reinstatement	The orderly placement and proper compaction of reinstatement layers up to and including the finished surface.
Preferred	The favoured choice between permitted options.
Product Acceptance Scheme	Product Acceptance Scheme in accordance with 100 Series of MCHW (such as British Board of Agrément and Highways Authority Product Approval Scheme (HAPAS) certificates).
PSV	Polished Stone Value.

PTV	Pendulum Test Value – a measure of the frictional properties of a surface using a pendulum test device.
Rigid construction	A pavement quality concrete surface slab (that may be reinforced) that also performs as the base. Under certain circumstances, as defined in S7, a rigid road that has been overlaid may be deemed to be a composite construction.
Road & footway structure	The surface course, binder course, base and sub-base.
SHW	Specification for Highway Works published as Volume 1 MCHW with Notes for Guidance in Volume 2.
Small features	Frames and surface boxes smaller than 600 mm x 600 mm.
Small openings	An excavation with a surface area up to 2 m ² that is not a micro trench, a narrow trench or a test hole of 150 mm diameter or less.
SRV	Skid Resistance Value – a measure of the frictional properties of a surface using a pendulum test device.
Stepped joint	A step where the reinstated binder and/or surface courses are made wider than the reinstatement below to provide higher resistance to water ingress.
Street	The whole or any part of the following, irrespective of whether it is a thoroughfare: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a) any highway, road, lane, footway, alley or passage, b) any square or court, and c) any land laid out as a way whether it is for the time being formed as a way or not; and for the avoidance of doubt includes land on the verge of a street or between two carriageways. Where a street passes over a bridge or through a tunnel, references to the street include that bridge or tunnel (NRSWA section 48 etc.).
Street manager	As referred to in the Act, section 49(4).

Surface treatment	A thin protective layer (e.g. surface dressing) applied to the surface to restore skid resistance and/or to seal it. This does not include high amenity or high duty surfaces, or surfaces with an aesthetic requirement.
The Act	The New Roads and Street Works Act 1991 (NRSWA).
Trim-line	The cut face that defines the outer edge of an excavation at the surface.
Trimback	The area between the trim-line and a fixed feature and/or the edge of an excavation.
UKAS	United Kingdom Accreditation Service.
Undertaker	A person with a statutory right to execute street works or the holder of a street works licence.
Urgent works	Works that fall short of emergency works but are of sufficient urgency to warrant immediate action to prevent further deterioration of an existing situation or to avoid an undertaker becoming in breach of a statutory obligation.
Verge	The area of the highway outside the carriageway (and footway if present). A verge may be slightly raised but is exclusive of embankment or cutting slopes and is generally grassed.
Wheel tracking	A test to determine the resistance to deformation (rutting) of, primarily, surface courses.

S0 Preamble

S0.1 General

This Code applies to all undertakers reinstating the highway. In brief, it prescribes materials that may be used, the expected standards of workmanship and performance standards to be complied with at both interim and permanent reinstatement stages, and for the duration of the relevant guarantee period, as defined in S1.2.

S0.2 Outline of the specification

The 'S' sections are the Code's specification and they are ordered to reflect what practitioners need to know before commencing works, what will be required to complete the works, and the obligations upon undertakers once works are completed.

S1 and S2 respectively set out the general parameters associated with reinstatements and the expected performance requirements.

S3, S4 and S5 follow the normal sequence of operations for undertakers, namely excavation, placing surround material to apparatus and backfilling.

S6 and S7 set out the detailed requirements and permissible reinstatement methods for bound materials in carriageways. Limitations on the use of preferred and permissible materials (more fully detailed in appendices A1 and A2) are described. Similarly, S8 and S9 set out the requirements for reinstatements in footways and verges.

S10 sets out the fundamental requirements for compaction of reinstatement materials, and includes guidance on the degree of compaction necessary to comply with the Code and its end performance requirements.

S11 and S12 respectively cover ancillary activities that might be encountered during street works and the prescribed remedial measures in the event that the reinstatement is defective or causes settlement beyond the limits of the reinstatement.

S0.3 Outline of the appendices

The 'A' section contains the appendices. They complement the specification section, setting out technical details and the design of different reinstatements. They reflect the various categories of surfaces normally encountered in carriageways, footways and verges.

S0.4 Outline of the Notes for Guidance

The Notes for Guidance complement the Code and some of the appendices. However, whilst Notes for Guidance contain information thought to be useful to support practitioners they are generally not enforceable.

S0.5 Using the specification and appendices

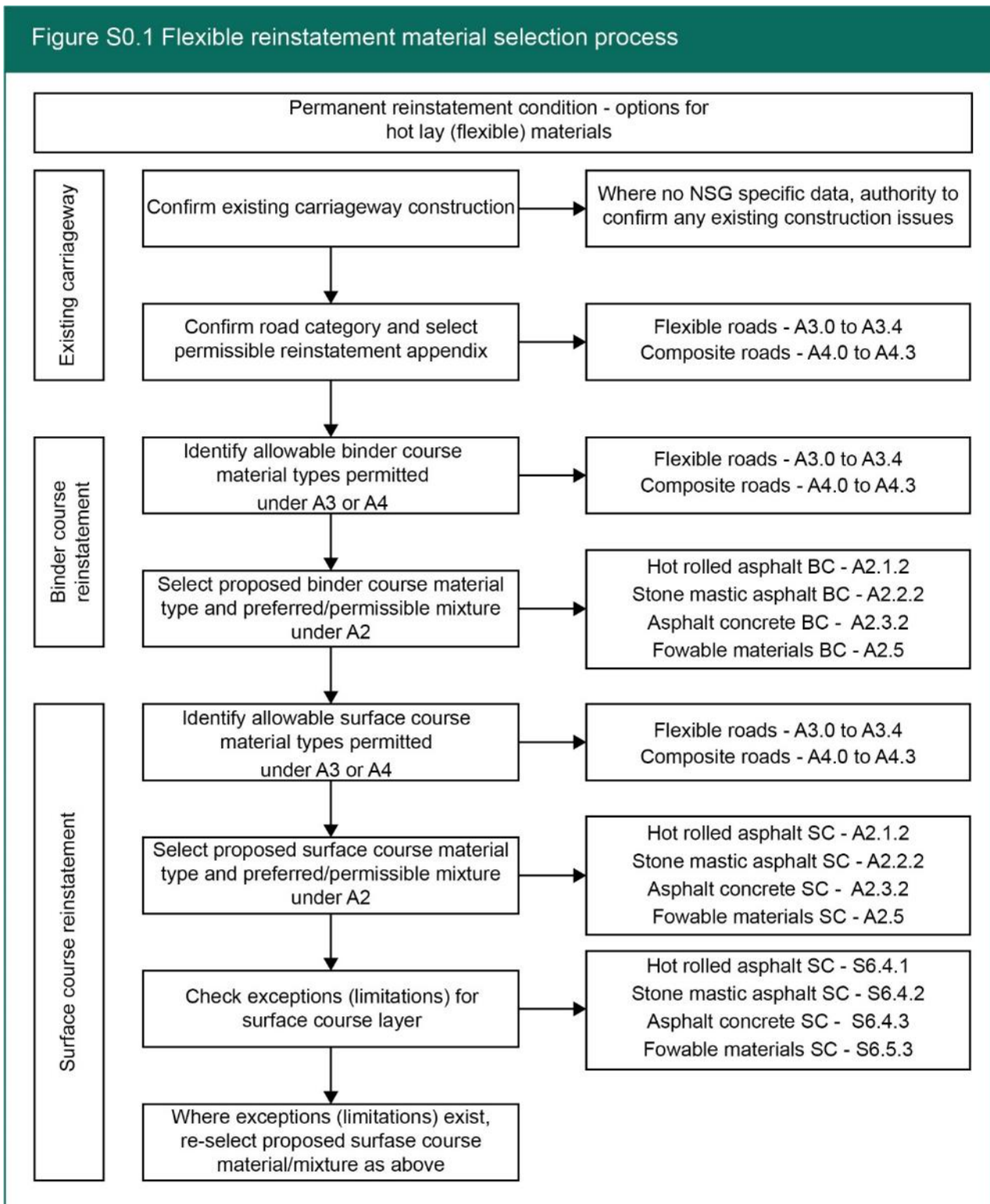
There are references to reinstatement materials in various parts of the specification and the appendices. These include:

- the overall class of materials, such as hot rolled asphalts (HRA), stone mastic asphalts (SMA), asphalt concretes (AC) and traditional concretes used in some roads;
- different types of mixture within each class of material. These tend to relate to the relative position of the mixture within the overall reinstatement (e.g. AC surface course, AC binder course) and reflect the design function of the layer;
- different preferred (and permissible) mixtures for different layers;
- different thicknesses of mixture layers;
- specific requirements and limitations for surface courses.

Each of the above has been assigned to different parts of the Code and it is essential that they are taken into account when selecting the reinstatement design for a particular surface category.

The reinstatement of flexible roads (and footways) is particularly complex at the reinstatement design selection stage. To assist practitioners, Figure S0.1 sets out the intended materials selection process for flexible (and composite) carriageways.

Figure S0.1 Flexible reinstatement material selection process



S1 Operational principles

S1.1 General

This Code incorporates terminology introduced under the BS EN series of standards for asphalt, concrete, unbound and hydraulically bound mixtures.

S1.1.1 An undertaker executing street works must comply with this Code and guarantee the performance of the reinstatement for the relevant guarantee period.

S1.1.2 Reinstatement must be carried out using a permitted method incorporating the highest degree of immediate or permanent reinstatement, as considered appropriate for the circumstances in the opinion of the undertaker.

S1.1.3 If, at any time during a guarantee period, the reinstatement fails the relevant performance requirements of this Code, the undertaker must carry out remedial action to restore it to a compliant condition. An interim reinstatement must normally be made permanent within six months.

S1.1.4 The requirements of this Code apply to streets that are maintainable or prospectively maintainable at public expense. In the case of all other streets, only the parts of the Code relating to “surround to apparatus” and “backfill” apply. Surfacing layers should be reinstated to match existing construction as far as is reasonably practicable. The exception to this is where options are provided within this Code for selection of asphalt surfaces, including details of where they may be used. In all cases, reinstatement must be to the reasonable satisfaction of the street manager. Specific provisions are given for high amenity areas (S1.4.2) in this Code.

S1.2 Guarantee period

S1.2.1 The undertaker must ensure that an interim reinstatement conforms to the prescribed standards until the permanent reinstatement is completed, and that the permanent reinstatement conforms to the prescribed standards throughout the guarantee period.

S1.2.2 The guarantee period begins on completion of the permanent reinstatement and runs for two years in general, or three years in the case of deep openings. Note that it is the completion of the permanent reinstatement, rather than the date of informing the authority that the reinstatement is completed, that triggers the start of the guarantee period.

S1.3 Road categories

S1.3.1 There are five categories of road, each with a limiting capacity expressed in millions of standard axles (msa) as shown in Table S1.1.

Road category	Traffic capacity
Type 0	Roads carrying over 30 to 125 msa
Type 1	Roads carrying over 10 to 30 msa
Type 2	Roads carrying over 2.5 to 10 msa
Type 3	Roads carrying over 0.5 to 2.5 msa
Type 4	Roads carrying up to 0.5 msa

S1.3.2 Roads carrying more than 125 msa are not covered in this Code. Reinstatement designs for such roads must be agreed between the undertaker and the authority.

S1.3.3 The road categories in Table S1.1 are based on the expected traffic to be carried over the next 20 years. Each authority must categorise its road network on this basis and the undertaker must use the most current information available from the authority. Where an authority has not classified its roads as required by this Code, the undertaker must determine the classification of these roads, as necessary, and provide a copy of the classification to all parties concerned.

S1.3.4 Valid traffic flows must be assessed by accurately monitoring commercial vehicles over 1.5 tonnes unladen. Traffic growth rates must be determined from the average of at least three separate assessments carried out over at least three years. Where traffic growth rates are expected to increase significantly because of changing traffic patterns, only predictions generated from a recognised planning process may be used. A zero-traffic growth rate must be assumed until accurate information is available.

S1.3.5 The reinstatement must be designed using materials specified in A1, A2, A9 and A10. The overall layer thickness must be as specified in A3 to A7 for the various categories of road, footway, footpath, cycle track, verge or unmade ground, and must be compacted to the requirements of S10 and A8.

S1.4 Footway, footpath and cycle track categories

Footways, footpaths and cycle tracks are categorised as follows:

S1.4.1 High duty – routes designated as principal routes and used by an exceptionally large number of pedestrians and/or cyclists.

S1.4.2 High amenity – routes surfaced with one of the following surfaces, and constructed and maintained to a high standard:

- 1) Surfaces chosen specifically for decorative purposes, with special colours, textures or surface finishes; or

2) Flexible surfaces with a particular texture or distinctive coloured finish.
Such surfaces will usually be situated in conservation, leisure or ornamental areas, pedestrian precincts or where an authority has installed high quality paving.

S1.4.3 Other – surfaces that are neither high duty nor high amenity.

S1.4.4 Where an authority can demonstrate that a high duty or high amenity footway, footpath or cycle track has been constructed and maintained to a standard in excess of that prescribed in S2.2 and S2.3 (and registered accordingly) the reinstatement must meet the authority's standard of maintenance and their declared intervention criteria.

S1.5 Excavation and trench categories

S1.5.1 Large diameter core – a core over 150 mm in diameter.

S1.5.2 Micro trench – a trench up to 60 mm wide and over 1 m long.

S1.5.3 Narrow trench – a trench between 60 mm and 300 mm wide and over 1 m long.

S1.5.4 Trench - a trench wider than 300 mm and over 1 m long.

S1.5.5 Small openings – an excavation with a surface area up to 2 m² that is not a micro trench, a narrow trench, a large diameter core or a test hole of 150 mm diameter or less.

S1.5.6 Deep opening – any excavation where the depth of cover over apparatus is greater than 1.5 m but not including trenches with a depth of cover intermittently greater than 1.5 m over lengths of less than 5 m.

S1.5.7 Other openings – any excavation wider than 300 mm with a surface area over 2 m².

S1.6 Alternative options

S1.6.1 Subject to the provisions for alternative reinstatement materials (ARMs) and alternative technologies (ATs) in A9, an undertaker may adopt an alternative specification for materials and/or the installation process to take advantage of new or local materials and/or alternative compaction equipment, subject to the agreement of the authority, which must not be unreasonably withheld. There can be no departure from the performance requirements during the guarantee period.

S1.6.2 Subject to the provisions for ATs in A9, an undertaker may use alternative technologies (for example excavation processes and equipment), subject to the agreement of the authority. There must be no departure from the performance requirements during the guarantee period.

S1.6.3 Recycled or primary materials, or any combination thereof, are permitted by this Code provided they meet the end product and/or performance requirements and any compositional requirements for the relevant material layer.

S1.6.4 Bound materials are permitted for use as surround to apparatus and at backfill and sub-base layers provided they meet the relevant performance requirements of this Code. This includes an upper limit on strength.

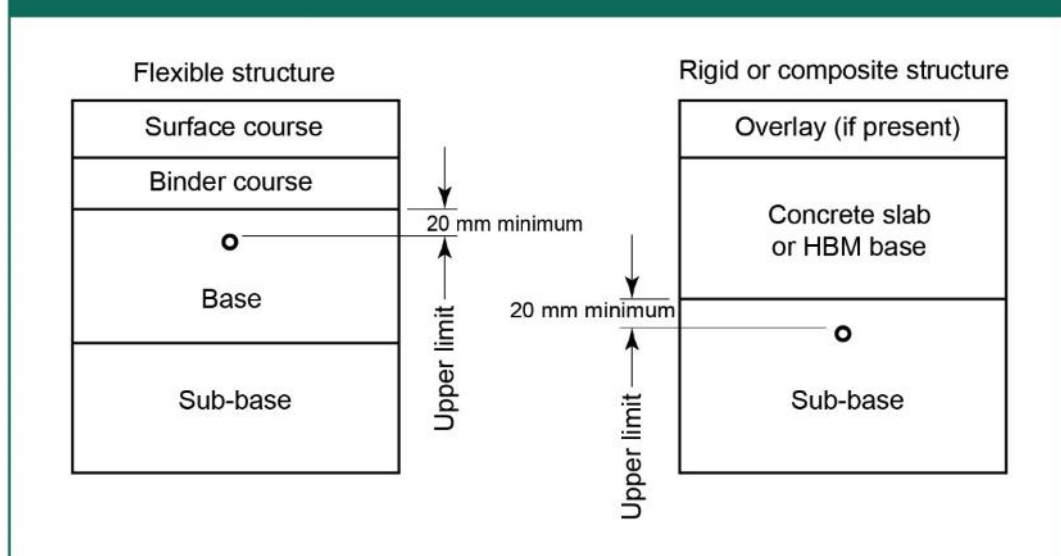
S1.7 Immediate works

- S1.7.1 There will be times when it becomes necessary to temporarily reinstate an excavation to permit immediate trafficking. In such circumstances, reinstatements may be completed using excavated or other materials, compacted in 100 mm layers, with a minimum surfacing thickness of 40 mm of bituminous material.
- S1.7.2 All materials so placed that do not comply with the requirements of this Code must be re-excavated and reinstated to the appropriate interim or permanent standard as specified in S6, S7 or S8. This should be done as soon as practicable but in any case, within 10 working days of completion of the immediate works or as agreed with the authority.

S1.8 Apparatus within road, footway, footpath and cycle track structures

- S1.8.1 Apparatus over 20 mm external diameter is not permitted within road, footway or cycle track structures unless special circumstances exist (for example shallow cover over culverted watercourses, utility apparatus etc). In these special circumstances the utility must consult the authority whose approval must not be unreasonably withheld.
- S1.8.2 Apparatus of 20 mm external diameter or less is not permitted above or within 20 mm of the following levels within a road structure (see Figure S1.1):
- 1) The base/binder course interface in a flexible structure.
 - 2) The underside of the base in a composite structure.
 - 3) The underside of the concrete slab in a rigid structure.
 - 4) The underside of the complete construction (formation layer) in a modular structure (refer to A6.1 to A6.3).

Figure S1.1 Location of apparatus of 20 mm diameter or less



S1.8.3 Where other existing apparatus or surrounds occur within the road structure, the method of reinstatement must be determined by agreement.

S1.9 Geosynthetic materials, geotextiles and reinforcement grids

S1.9.1 Where an authority knows of the existence of any of the above materials in areas likely to be affected by an undertaker's work, it should inform the undertaker before works start so that an appropriate reinstatement method can be agreed.

S1.9.2 If the undertaker is not informed of the existence of any of the above materials before works start but encounters them during the works, the undertaker should inform the authority immediately so that an appropriate reinstatement method can be agreed. In these circumstances, the undertaker is not liable for the repair of any damage caused to geosynthetic materials, geotextiles or reinforcement grids before their existence was known.

S1.10 Trees

S1.10.1 When working near trees, the National Joint Utilities Group Publication Volume 4 "NJUG Guidelines for the Planning, Installation and Maintenance of Utility apparatus in Proximity to Trees" should be followed. Relevant extracts of this publication are reproduced in NG1.10.

S1.10.2 In addition to the recommendations of the NJUG guidelines, the use of tree root barriers may be considered. Specialist advice from an arboriculturist should be sought.

S1.11 Conciliation and arbitration

S1.11.1 This Code is intended to provide sufficiently detailed guidance to enable agreement on its operation and implementation to be reached at local level. Authorities and undertakers should always work collaboratively and use their best endeavours to achieve a solution to disputes without having to refer them to conciliation. This might be achieved by referring the issue to management for settlement.

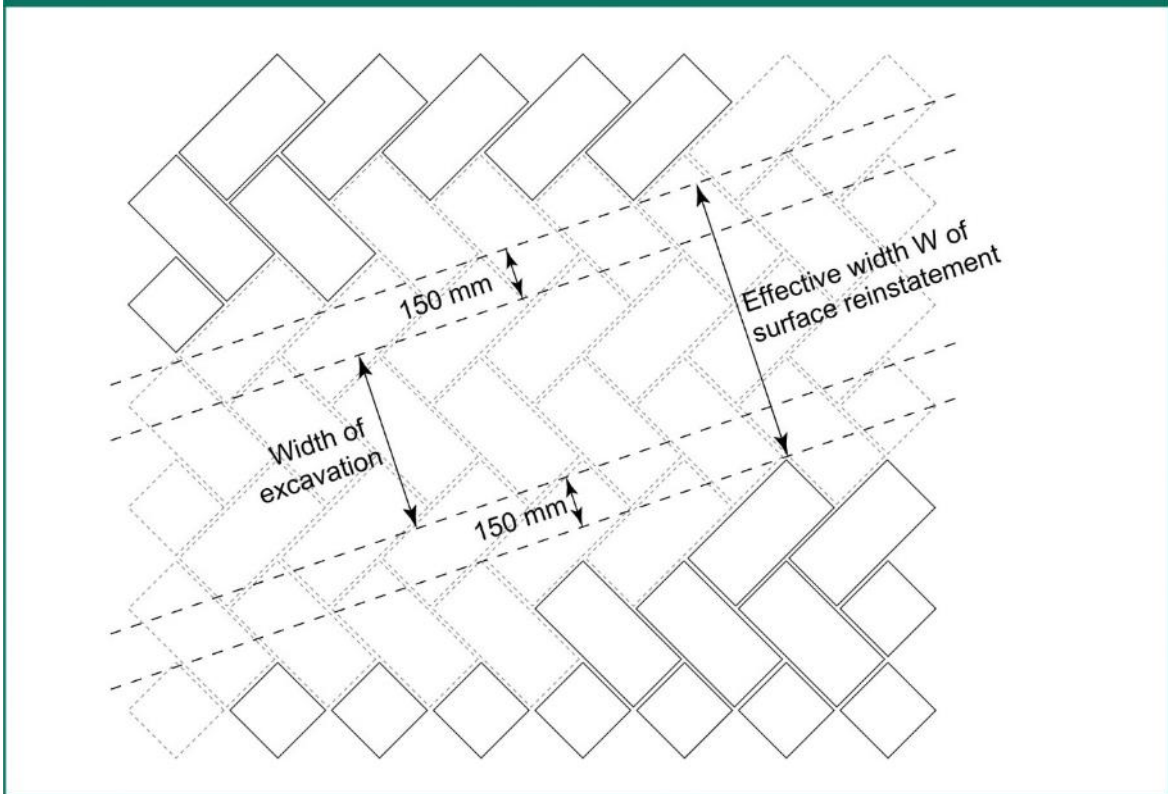
S1.11.2 If agreement cannot be reached, the provisions set out in the *Code for the Co-ordination of Street Works and Works for Road Purposes and Related Matters* should be followed.

S2 Performance requirements

S2.1 General

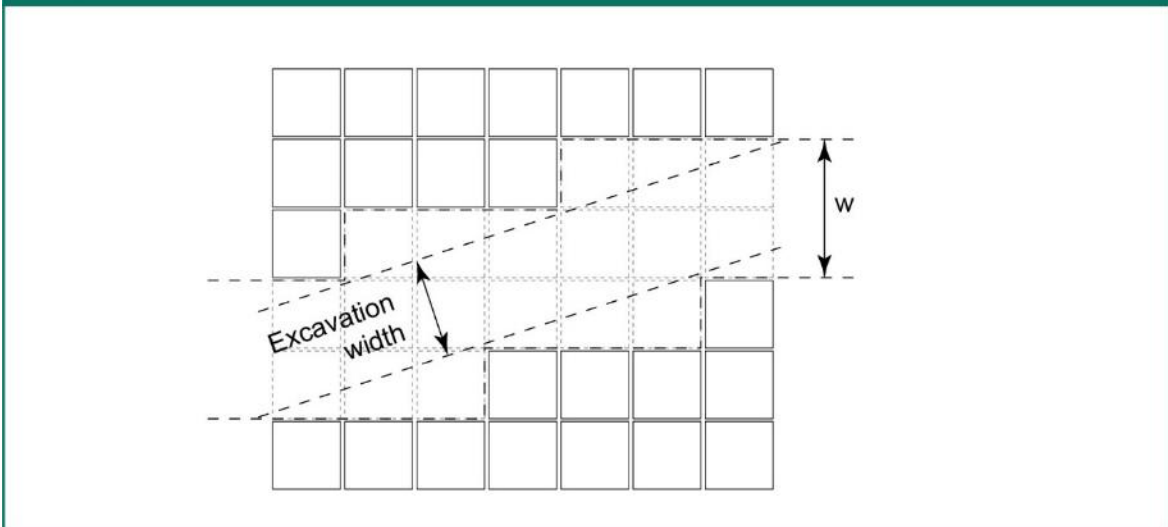
- S2.1.1 The performance requirements of this Code apply to streets that are maintainable or prospectively maintainable at public expense. In all other cases, the performance should match that of the existing construction, as far as reasonably practicable.
- S2.1.2 The performance requirements apply to immediate, interim and permanent reinstatements. For all interim reinstatements, the main consideration for meeting the requirements generally set out in S2 is maintaining highway safety. This is particularly important where deferred set mixtures (DSMs) are used in roads, especially the higher road categories.
- S2.1.3 If the surface profile of a reinstatement exceeds any intervention limit during any guarantee period, remedial action must be carried out to return it to the as-laid condition defined in S2.2.1 to S2.2.3.
- S2.1.4 No new guarantee period is required unless the cumulative settlement intervention limit is exceeded, and an engineering investigation has been completed in accordance with S2.5. Requirements for the re-excavation and subsequent reinstatement, as determined from the results of an engineering investigation, must be agreed and completed in accordance with S2.5.
- S2.1.5 Reinstatement of modular surface layers is described in A12. For modular surfaces the effective width of a reinstatement is as follows:
- 1) For modular surfaces where all sides of the module are 305 mm or less, the effective width of the reinstatement (W) is the distance between two parallel lines drawn 150 mm outside the edges of the excavation (see Figure S2.1a).

Figure S2.1a Surface area of reinstatement – modules ≤ 305 mm



- 2) For modular surfaces where any side of the module is greater than 305 mm, the effective width of the reinstatement (W) is the distance between the outer extremities of any modules that overlap the edge of the excavation (see Figure S2.1b).

Figure S2.1b Surface area of reinstatement – modules > 305 mm



- 3) Where there is evidence of adjoining modules being affected by the excavation, the effective width must be extended to include them (see S2.5).

S2.1.6 Surface deformation resulting from vehicles over-running reinstatements within paved footways, including footpaths and cycle tracks, must be excluded from all measurements carried out for the purposes of monitoring the reinstatement surface performance, unless such reinstatements have been carried out under the provisions of S8.7.

S2.1.7 Paved footways and their reinstatements can be reasonably expected to withstand occasional overrun by vehicles less than 1.5 tonnes unladen. Where it can be shown that occasional over-run by such vehicles has caused surface deformation to a reinstatement within a paved footway and the adjacent surfaces do not show any associated surface deformation, the authority may notify the undertaker accordingly, whereupon the undertaker must restore the reinstatement to the as-laid profile.

s2.2 Surface profile

As-laid profile

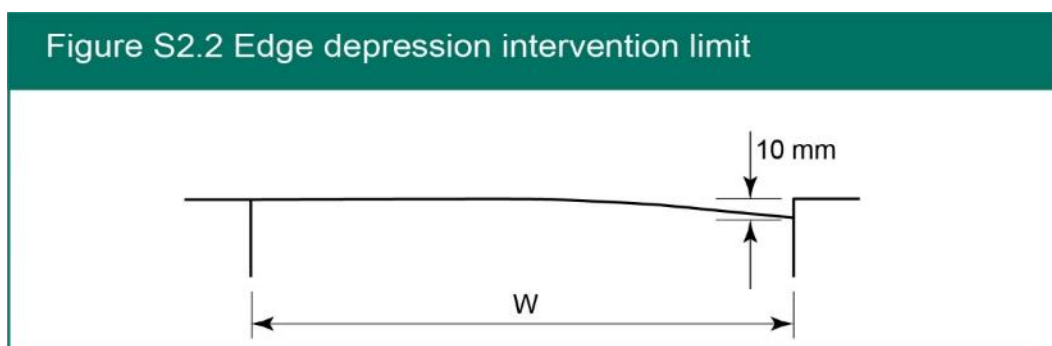
S2.2.1 The reinstatement surface must be flush with the surrounding surfaces. There should be no significant depression or crowning present. The construction tolerance at the edges of a reinstatement is ± 6 mm. Once the reinstatement is registered as completed and opened to traffic, the intervention limits in S2.2.2 to S2.2.10 apply.

S2.2.2 At the end of the guarantee period, where the profile of the surfaces adjacent to the reinstatement is uniform but the surface of the reinstatement is outside the intervention limits, the undertaker must carry out remedial works to restore the surface of the reinstatement to match the adjacent surfaces.

S2.2.3 It can be difficult to match a new surface to adjacent surfaces when using hand tools on reinstatements in restricted areas (e.g. around surface boxes). In such cases, localised variations in the hand-laid surface profile should be acceptable to the authority provided that they are within the specified tolerances.

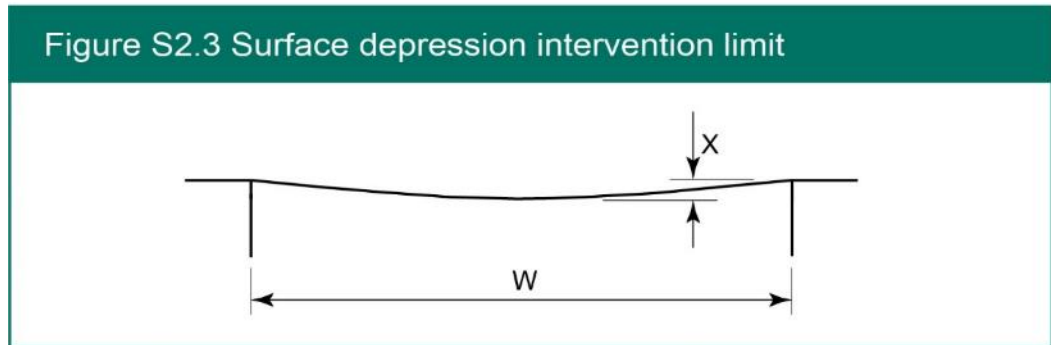
Edge depression

S2.2.4 An edge depression is a level difference at the interface of a reinstatement and the adjacent surface or ironwork. Intervention is required where the edge depression exceeds 10 mm over a continuous length of more than 100 mm in any direction; see Figure S2.2.



Surface depression

- S2.2.5 A surface depression is a depressed area in a reinstatement having generally smooth edges and gently sloping sides; see Figure S2.3. Intervention is required where the surface depression spanning more than 100 mm in any plan dimension exceeds the intervention limit X shown in Table S2.1.



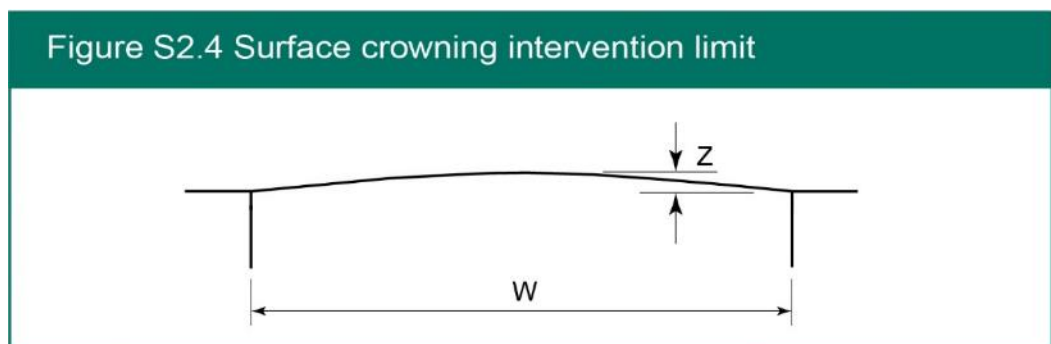
- S2.2.6 Earlier intervention is required if the depression alone results in standing water wider than 500 mm or exceeding 1 m² in area, at 2 hours after the cessation of rainfall.

Table S2.1 Intervention limits – Surface depression

Reinstatement width W (mm)	Intervention limit X (mm)	Combined defect intervention limit (mm)
Up to 400	10	10
Over 400 to 500	12	10
Over 500 to 600	14	12
Over 600 to 700	17	14
Over 700 to 800	19	16
Over 800 to 900	22	18
Over 900	25	20

Surface crowning

- S2.2.7 Surface crowning is where the reinstatement lies above the mean level of the adjacent surfaces; see Figure S2.4. Intervention is required where the surface crowning spanning more than 100 mm in any plan dimension exceeds the intervention limit Z shown in Table S2.2.



- S2.2.8 Earlier intervention is required if crowning alone results in standing water wider than 500 mm or exceeding 1 m² in area, at 2 hours after the cessation of rainfall.

Table S2.2 Intervention limits – Surface crowning

Reinstatement width W (mm)	Intervention limit Z (mm)	Combined defect intervention limit (mm)
Up to 400	10	10
Over 400 to 500	12	10
Over 500 to 600	14	12
Over 600 to 700	17	14
Over 700 to 800	19	16
Over 800 to 900	22	18
Over 900	25	20

Combined defect

- S2.2.9 A combined defect is an area in a reinstatement where any combination of edge depression, surface depression or surface crowning exists. Where combined defects occur, the intervention limits for surface depression and surface crowning in S2.2 and Tables S2.1 and Table S2.2 must be reduced by 20% and rounded up to the nearest whole number, subject to a minimum of 10 mm.
- S2.2.10 Intervention is required where an individual defect, spanning more than 100 mm in any plan dimension, exceeds the combined defect intervention limit for the relevant defect, as defined in S2.2.4, Table S2.1 and Table S2.2. The individual defects must be measured, and the 20% reduction in intervention limits applied, as shown in NG2.2.

Condition at end of guarantee period

- S2.2.11 At the end of the guarantee period the condition of a reinstatement is not required to be superior in any respect to the condition of the adjacent surfaces. Where the profile of the surfaces adjacent to the reinstatement is uniform and substantially superior to the surface of the reinstatement, the undertaker must carry out remedial work to restore the surface profile of the reinstatement to a condition consistent with the adjacent surfaces.

S2.3 Fixed features

As-laid profile

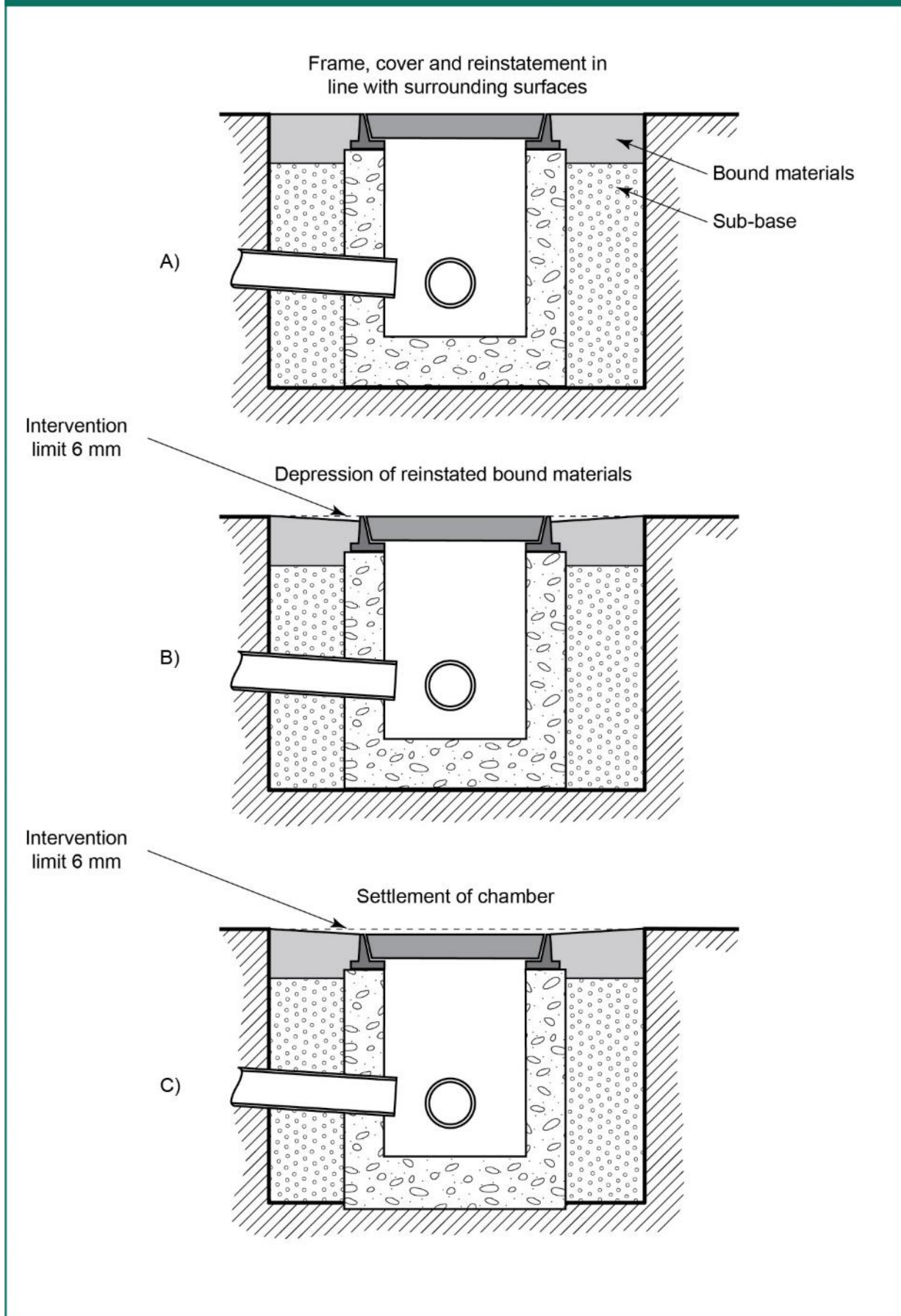
- S2.3.1 All fixed features, such as edgings, channel blocks, drainage fixtures, surface boxes and ironware etc., should match the adjacent surfaces and must be installed to the following level criteria:
- 1) Fixed features must be laid to coincide with the mean level of immediately adjacent surfaces.

- 2) The construction tolerance between the levels of the fixed feature (excluding drainage features) and immediately adjacent surfaces is ± 6 mm.
- 3) Drainage features must be installed flush with, or not more than 6 mm below, the level of the adjacent surface.
- 4) At pedestrian crossing points where the kerb is flush with the carriageway, the kerb must be relaid flush with, or not more than 6 mm above, the carriageway.

S2.3.2

Figure S2.5 illustrates the relationship between immediately adjacent surfaces and the surround reinstatement when setting the level of access covers and frames.

Figure S2.5 Fixed features relative to adjacent surfaces



Intervention

- S2.3.3 Intervention is required where the mean level of edgings, channel blocks, surface boxes and ironware etc., do not coincide with the mean level of the adjacent surfaces, within ± 10 mm.
- S2.3.4 For drainage fixtures, intervention is required where the feature differs from the mean level of the adjacent surfaces, within a tolerance of +0 mm to -15 mm.
- S2.3.5 For pedestrian crossing points, intervention is required where the edge depression at the interface between the paving (including tactile paving) and the dropped kerb exceeds 6 mm over a continuous length of more than 100 mm in any direction.

S2.4 Surface regularity

Requirements

- S2.4.1 At any time during the guarantee period, the surface regularity in the direction of traffic flow of a permanent reinstatement in the road and the adjacent wheel track must comply with the following requirements:
- 1) The number of longitudinal surface irregularities along a permanent reinstatement should not exceed the lower limit shown in Table S2.3.

Table S2.3 Surface regularity

Surface irregularities not less than (mm)	Irregularities per section		
	Lower limit	Multiplier	Upper limit
4	11	1.2	22
7	2	1.2	4
10	1	1.2	2

- 2) Where the number of longitudinal surface irregularities along a permanent reinstatement exceeds the lower limit in Table S2.3, the number of irregularities in the direction of traffic flow along the adjacent wheel track must be recorded for comparison.
- 3) Where the number of surface irregularities along a permanent reinstatement and the adjacent road both exceed the lower limit shown in Table S2.3, the number of longitudinal surface irregularities recorded along the reinstatement should not exceed the product of the number measured along the adjacent road and the multiplier shown in Table S2.3.

Measurement

- S2.4.2 Surface irregularities may be measured using a rolling straightedge. However, a rolling straightedge must not be used to determine surface regularity where:

- 1) The line of a trench is parallel to the centreline of the road for less than 30 m; or

- 2) The line of a trench is parallel to the line of traffic flow for less than 30 m; or
- 3) The line of a road and/or the trench follows a bend with a radius of less than 250 m; or
- 4) The number of surface irregularities recorded along the adjacent road exceeds the upper limit shown in Table S2.3.

S2.4.3 Where the rolling straightedge cannot be used, the surface regularity must be assessed by another agreed method (e.g. 3 m straightedge).

Monitoring

S2.4.4 For the purposes of monitoring the surface regularity of road reinstatements, relevant lengths of the trench should be divided into test sections 30 m long. The upper and lower limit values for surface irregularities for each 30 m section are shown in Table S2.3. For the final section, which may exceed 30 m but will be less than 60 m, the limits should be calculated pro rata and rounded up to the nearest whole number.

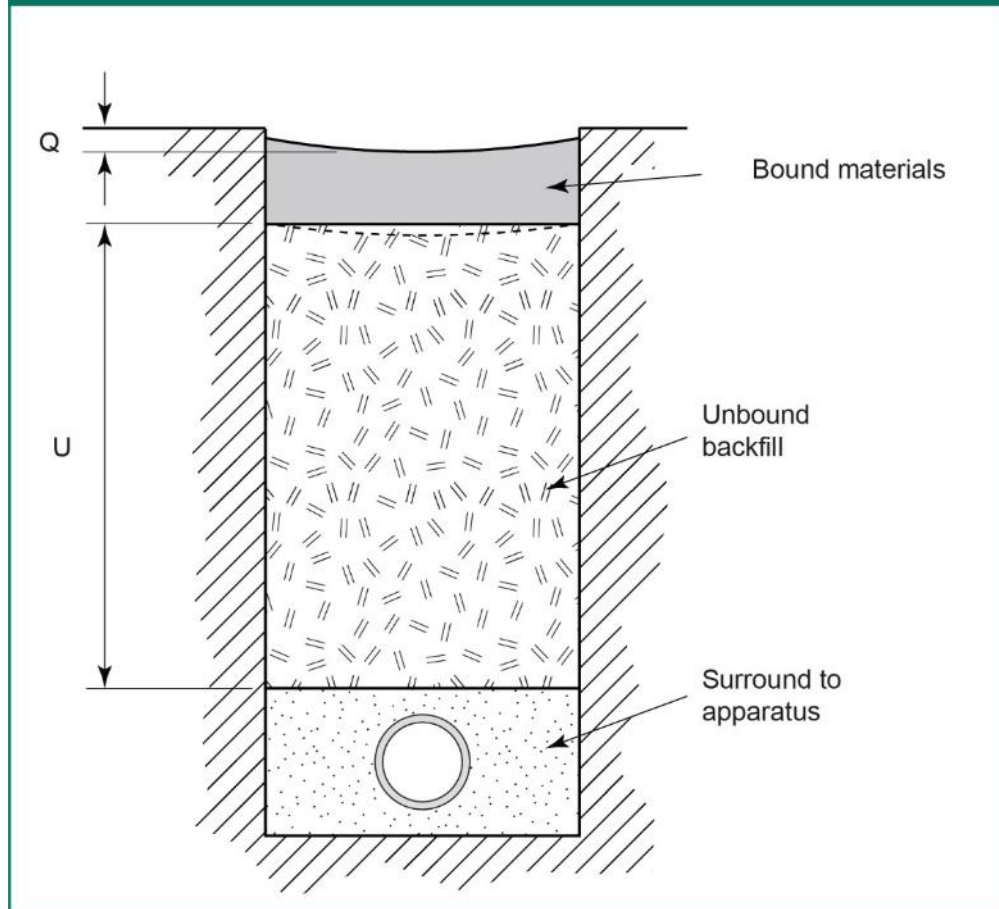
S2.5 **Structural integrity**

The requirements for structural integrity are applicable to both paved and unpaved surfaces.

Cumulative settlement

S2.5.1 The cumulative settlement of a reinstatement is the level difference, Q , between the adjacent surfaces and the original surface of the reinstatement – see Figure S2.6. This measurement therefore includes the thickness of any materials added during any preceding remedial work.

Figure S2.6 Cumulative settlement



S2.5.2 If the cumulative settlement of a reinstatement exceeds the limits shown in Table S2.4 at any time within the guarantee period, an agreed engineering investigation must be carried out jointly with the authority. The investigation should establish whether settlement is likely to continue and determine the extent of remedial action required.

Table S2.4 Structural integrity		
Reinstatement width (mm)	Intervention limit Q	
	Normal ground conditions	Bad ground conditions
Up to 1000	1.5% U or 30 mm whichever is greater	2.5% U or 30 mm whichever is greater
Over 1000	1.5% U or 35 mm whichever is greater	1.5% U or 35 mm whichever is greater

S2.5.3 Where it is necessary to re-excavate a reinstatement to carry out an engineering investigation, the subsequent permanent reinstatement is deemed to be new and the guarantee period begins again.

S2.5.4 Where very deep excavation work is carried out in bad ground, consideration should be given to an agreed extension of the interim reinstatement period. An appropriate extension will allow the reinstatement and surrounding ground to achieve an acceptable degree of

stability before permanent reinstatement is required. The performance requirements of S2 apply throughout the extended interim period.

Bad ground

S2.5.5 Bad ground is deemed to be natural or made-up ground between the base of the excavation and the binder course level that contains any of the following:

- 1) Class E Unacceptable materials, as specified in A1.5.
- 2) Materials that are loose or friable in their natural state and are not self-supporting at an exposed face.
- 3) An excessive amount of rocks or boulders, loose random rubble, penning, setts or cobbles etc, at any depth where their removal during excavation could cause loosening of the ground adjacent to the excavation.
- 4) Materials that are saturated, regardless of whether free or running water is present.

S2.6 Skid resistance

General

S2.6.1 The texture depth, Polished Stone Value (PSV) and Aggregate Abrasion Value (AAV) at the running surface of all interim and permanent reinstatements in all roads must comply with the following:

- 1) There is no requirement to provide a texture depth, PSV or AAV that is superior to that of existing running surfaces adjacent to the reinstatement.
- 2) For rigid roads, where the surface of the concrete is the running surface and it has been randomly grooved, a brushed surface finish to the requirements of Table S2.5 is permitted for small excavations, narrow trenches and other openings less than 1 m wide.

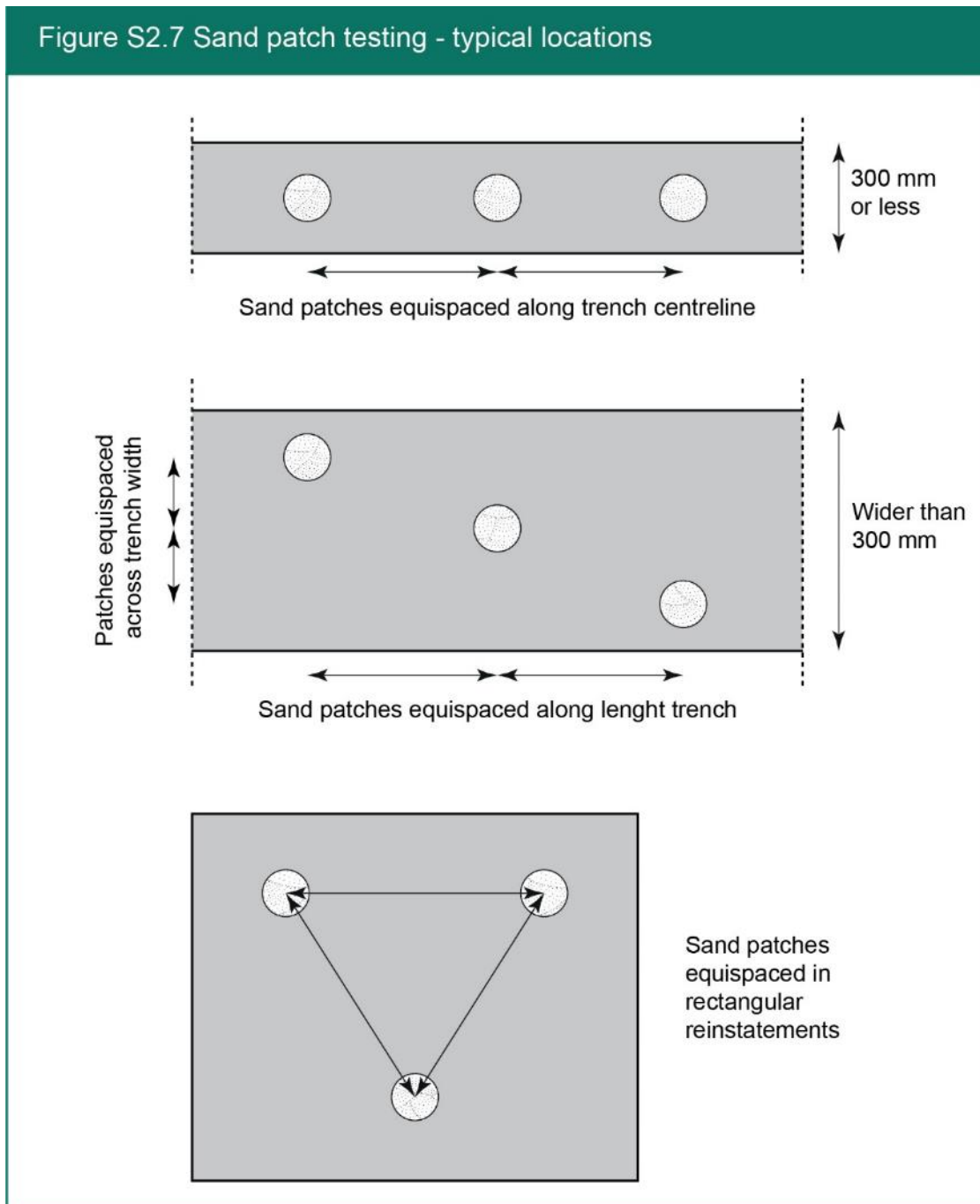
Texture depth

S2.6.2 Subject to the requirements of S2.6.1, for bituminous surface course materials permitted in A2, and rigid roads where the surface of the concrete is the running surface, the texture depth must comply with the requirements of Table S2.5.

Table S2.5 Texture depth

Reinstatement location	Texture depth (mm)			
	Chipped HRA and surface dressings	SMA and TSCS	All other bituminous surfaces	Concrete carriageways
Roads where speed limit > 59 mph (90Km/h)	1.5 average 1.2 minimum	1.3 average 1.0 minimum	0.6 minimum	Table 10/8 of SHW Clause 1026
All other roads	1.0 average 0.8 minimum	1.0 average 0.8 minimum	0.6 minimum	1.25 maximum 0.6 minimum

- S2.6.3** The definitive method for measuring the average depth of carriageway surface macrotexture in this Code is the volumetric patch technique described in SHW Clause 921 for bituminous surfaces and Clause 1026 for concrete surfaces. For concrete or narrow reinstatements, a modified version using 50% of the test medium (e.g. sand or glass beads) may be used.
- S2.6.4** Laser based macrotexture measurement devices correlated against the definitive method may be used as a supplementary method only (e.g. for rapid assessment prior to a targeted test plan using the definitive method).
- S2.6.5** For the purposes of monitoring texture depth, the entire reinstatement must be divided into areas of 18 m² and tested as follows:
- 1) Reinstatement of small excavations – single measurement centred within the reinstatement.
 - 2) Reinstatement of >2 m² to 18 m² – 3 measurements.
 - 3) Reinstatement >18 m² – 3 measurements per 18 m².
 - 4) Trenches 300 mm wide or less – as above but positioned along the centreline of the trench.
- S2.6.6** Figure S2.7 illustrates the requirements of S2.6.5 apart from small excavations.
- S2.6.7** Where the test patch extends beyond the edge of the reinstatement, the test must be repeated using half the volume of the test medium. Any comparison tests on the existing road should be carried out adjacent to the test locations in the reinstatement, and as close to the reinstatement edge as practicable.



Polished Stone Value (PSV)

S2.6.8

To simplify the determination of the PSV requirements for aggregates in asphalt surface courses, reinstatements in roads are classified into two site categories according to the apparent degree of risk associated with the site location, as follows:

Site A – Potentially high risk

Includes:

- Traffic signals, pedestrian crossings, railway level crossings – including 50 m approaches
- Roundabouts and their exits - including 50 m approaches

- Bends < 100 m radius where the speed limit is more than 40 mph (65 km/h) – including 50 m approaches
- Downhill gradients over 10% for more than 50 m (single or dual carriageway)
- Uphill gradients over 10% for more than 50 m (single carriageway only)

Site B – Average to low risk

All other situations on single and dual carriageways, including the following:

- Generally straight sections of carriageway
- Approaches to and across major/minor road junctions
- Bends of 100 m radius or greater, at any speed limit
- Downhill/uphill sections of 10% gradient or less

S2.6.9 Subject to the requirements of S2.6.1, for all bituminous surface course materials permitted in A2, the PSV of all pre-coated chippings and the coarse aggregate in all mixes used without pre-coated chippings at the running surface must comply with the requirements of Table S2.7. The coarse aggregate in all mixes used with pre-coated chippings at the running surface must have a minimum PSV of 45. The PSV must be tested in accordance with BS EN 1097-8.

Table S2.7 Bituminous roads – Polish Stone Value		
Road type	Reinstatement minimum PSV	
	Site A Potentially high risk	Site B Average to low risk
0	68	68
1	68	65
2	65	60
3	65	53
4	65	53

Note: Limestone coarse aggregate is not normally used in the running surface of roads (PD 6691+A1, 2016); therefore, its use is only permitted by agreement.

S2.6.10 The past use of these site categories and Table S2.7 has indicated that the minimum values noted are appropriate in most cases. However, where an authority has alternative requirements for aggregate properties (e.g. part of the DMRB or a published policy), this information must be supplied to the undertaker. Where this is the case the undertaker must specify aggregate properties in accordance with this information subject to S2.6.1 (1).

S2.6.11 Where an interim surface course contains an aggregate that may not comply with the requirements of Table S2.7, a surface treatment may become necessary before the reinstatement is made permanent. In this case, the requirements of Table S2.7 are applicable only to the coarse

aggregate contained in the surface treatment and not the underlying aggregate in the interim surface course.

S2.6.12 Where a high friction coating is to be applied to a reinstatement to match an existing coating, an alternative PSV may be specified, by agreement, in place of the requirements of Table S2.7, depending upon the nature of the site and the period over which the friction coating will be absent.

S2.6.13 Where a permanent surface course contains more than one type of aggregate or aggregates from more than one source, all coarse aggregates within the mixture must comply with the PSV requirements of Table S2.7.

Aggregate Abrasion Value (AAV)

S2.6.14 Subject to the requirements of S2.6.1, for all bituminous surface course materials permitted in A2, the AAV of all pre-coated chippings and the coarse aggregate in all mixes used without pre-coated chippings at the running surface must comply with the requirements of Table S2.8.

Table S2.8 Bituminous roads – Aggregate Abrasion Value

Road type	Reinstatement maximum AAV	
	All pre-coated chippings	SMA, material to PD6691 surface courses
0	10	12
1	12	14
2	12	14
3	14	16
4	14	16

(See also S6.4 for permitted surface course options)

S2.6.15 The AAV must be measured in accordance with BS 812: Part 113.

S2.6.16 Where an interim surface course material contains an aggregate that may not comply with the requirements of Table S2.8, a surface treatment may become necessary before the reinstatement is made permanent. In this case, the requirements of Table S2.8 are applicable only to the coarse aggregate contained in the surface treatment and not to the underlying aggregate in the interim surface course.

S2.6.17 The past use of Table S2.8 has indicated that the minimum values noted are appropriate in most cases. However, where an authority has alternative requirements for aggregate properties then this information must be supplied to the undertaker. Where this is the case the undertaker must specify aggregate properties in accordance with this information subject to S2.6.1(1).

S2.7 Sampling and testing

S2.7.1 All sampling and testing must be carried out by a laboratory holding current UKAS accreditation covering the specified method of testing, unless otherwise agreed.

S2.7.2 The authority may carry out sampling and testing at its discretion. If there is no agreement between the authority and undertaker on the test results and findings, further testing may be undertaken by a UKAS accredited laboratory to reconcile the matter.

S2.8 Undertaker's works in deteriorated or distressed areas

S2.8.1 Where existing surfaces are close to or exceed the intervention and construction tolerances in S2, or where the pavement shows signs of deterioration or distress, it can be difficult for the undertaker to construct a compliant reinstatement.

S2.8.2 Where an undertaker feels constructing a compliant reinstatement is not possible owing to the existing condition/profile of the adjacent surface and where it may be necessary to reinstate an area considerably bigger than would normally be required:

- 1) it is the undertaker's responsibility to evidence and factually record it (ideally this would be done in advance of excavation).
- 2) it is the undertaker's responsibility to demonstrate risk management of the works to avoid or limit damage.
- 3) the authority might agree to meet the costs of reinstating an area of surfacing greater than what would be required in normal circumstances.

S2.8.3 In the absence of an agreement, the undertaker is under no obligation to extend the reinstatement works but must ensure that the interface between the reinstatement and the adjoining surface does not create a trip hazard.

S2.8.4 For modular surfaces, it may be necessary to install different sized modules or cementitious infills (see A12.2.7 and A12.2.8) to minimise surface irregularities at the interfaces to meet the requirements of S2.

S3 Excavation

S3.1 Breaking the surface

- S3.1.1 Care must be taken when cutting surface layers to avoid undue damage to the running surface or to the bond between the surface course and binder course. Cutting by machine, e.g. road saw, coring equipment or planer, is preferred. All loose materials must be removed to ensure that the excavated edge is in a safe and stable condition.
- S3.1.2 When excavating in modular construction, the existing modules must be lifted carefully and stored for re-use. Where existing damage has resulted in fragmentation or breakage of modules made out of natural materials, the fragments must be removed and stored unless agreed otherwise with the authority.
- S3.1.3 The authority must be informed of any material, including natural material, cobbles or setts encountered that may be of historical or archaeological interest and must be afforded the opportunity to inspect the material before it is excavated.
- S3.1.4 Modules must be reinstated in accordance with A12.

S3.2 Excavation

- S3.2.1 Excavation should be carried out in a manner that avoids undue damage.
- S3.2.2 Trench widths should be such that adequate access is available for placement and, where non flowable materials are used, compaction of the surround to apparatus.
- S3.2.3 Trench walls should be even and vertical with no undercutting of the running surface. If undercutting occurs and compaction is impossible, measures should be taken to fill any voids as soon as practicable or immediately after trench support has been provided.
- S3.2.4 Excavations must be protected, as far as is reasonably practicable, from the ingress of water, and water running into them must be drained or pumped to an approved disposal point. Any drainage sumps must be sited to prevent damage to the excavation.

S3.3 Excavated material

S3.3.1 Excavated materials that are to be re-used should be protected from excessive drying or wetting during storage. Additionally, these materials should be excavated, stored, handled and laid to avoid contamination, segregation and/or loss of fines.

S3.3.2 Excavated material unsuitable for re-use must be removed from site as soon as practicable. Excavated material retained on site must be stockpiled within the confines of site barriers, at a safe distance from the trench edge and prevented from entering any drainage system or water course.

S3.4 Side support

S3.4.1 The sides of excavations in soft or loose ground must, ordinarily, be provided with a side support system. The support system must be designed and installed to restrain lateral movement of the walls and should be installed without delay.

S3.4.2 Supports must be progressively withdrawn as backfilling and compaction progresses, and all voids carefully filled.

S3.5 Drainage

S3.5.1 The undertaker must take all reasonably practicable measures to prevent the permanent disturbance of artificial or natural drainage systems/paths. Where disturbance does occur, it must be notified immediately to the owners of the system and any landowners who are affected. Disturbed systems must be restored to the requirements of the owner; see S11.4.

S3.5.2 For any works site where the authority is aware of a history of flooding or drainage problems, it should inform the undertaker in advance. In such situations the undertaker and the authority should liaise closely to identify a suitable method of working.

S3.5.3 If site conditions indicate to the undertaker that the use of some reinstatement materials may be detrimental to drainage, advice on the selection of suitable materials should be sought from the authority.

S3.5.4 See also S11.4 for other water-related matters.

S3.6 Shallow or aborted excavations

S3.6.1 No shallow or aborted excavation is permitted to undermine the integrity of the remaining road structure. Any prematurely terminated excavation must be reinstated in accordance with the following requirements:

- 1) Where reinstatement can be achieved by laying a thicker surface course in accordance with A2, or S6.6 in the case of micro trenches, or S6.5 in the case of small excavations and narrow trenches, no further excavation is required.

- 2) In all other cases, the binder course must be excavated to allow a binder course layer to be reinstated in accordance with A2. Where the existing depth of excavation is greater than 100 mm and the additional depth is less than the minimum layer thickness of base material, a thicker binder course may be laid.
- 3) In deeper excavations, no further excavation is required. Reinstatement must be carried out in accordance with the relevant requirements of S5 to S9, as appropriate.

S3.7 Trenchless pipelaying

- S3.7.1 Moleploughing uses a ploughing machine to pull a flexible pipe or cable below ground. It is employed in unmade ground and may be used in verges. The moleplough creates a slit in the surface of the ground which should not require reinstating provided that the surface profile is restored in accordance with S9. However, where connections are made to apparatus installed by moleploughing, excavations must be carried out and reinstated in accordance with this Code.
- S3.7.2 Soil displacement moling and other trenchless methods do not create an excavation and, when carried out in a proper manner, do not require reinstatement. However, at launch and receive pits and at any intermediate excavations where connections are made to apparatus, reinstatement must be carried out in accordance with this Code.
- S3.7.3 Where, as a result of the use of trenchless methods, the authority has reasonable cause to believe that damage may have been caused to the structure of the street, the Investigatory Works Procedure described in the HAUC Code of Practice for Inspections should be commenced as if the defect was associated with a reinstatement defect for the purposes of that Code.
- S3.7.4 Any remedial work agreed between the authority and the undertaker to be necessary must be carried out in accordance with this Code and at the undertaker's expense if carried out by the undertaker. If the agreed remedial work is carried out by the authority at the undertaker's expense, the provisions of this Code do not apply.
- S3.7.5 In the absence of agreement between the authority and the undertaker, liability for any damage must be determined in accordance with section 82 of the Act (liability for any damage or loss caused).

S4 Surround to apparatus

S4.1 General

- S4.1.1 Surround to apparatus may be laid to a maximum thickness of 250 mm above the crown of the apparatus. The surround to apparatus must not intrude into the road structure. It may be necessary for the undertaker to lay apparatus deeper to avoid this.
- S4.1.2 Laying and compaction procedures used for all materials laid as surround to apparatus are the responsibility of the undertaker.
- S4.1.3 Selecting materials for the surround to apparatus is the responsibility of the undertaker. All materials used for the surround to apparatus must comply with the following requirements:
- 1) Class E Unacceptable materials, as defined in A1.5, and materials that contain particles greater than 37.5 mm nominal size cannot be used as surround to the apparatus.
 - 2) Hydraulically bound materials (HBMs), complying with A10.2, are permitted within the surround to apparatus as the entire layer or combined with any other permitted materials, in any proportion, within any reinstatement.
 - 3) An alternative reinstatement material (ARM) may be used for the entire surround to apparatus or any part thereof, in accordance with A9.
 - 4) Preformed modules or other protective measures may be placed within the surround to apparatus, according to the undertaker's requirements.

S5 Backfill

S5.1 Backfill material classification

General

S5.1.1 Backfill materials, whether imported or sourced from excavated materials, are classified as follows:

Class A – Graded granular materials

S5.1.2 Materials with a maximum of 10% by mass passing a 63 µm BS sieve, and with all material passing a 425 µm BS sieve showing a plasticity index of 6 or less, determined in accordance with BS1377: Part 2: Method 5.4, are classified as Class A graded granular materials.

S5.1.3 Class A Graded Granular Materials may include Type 2 Unbound Mixtures to SHW Clause 804 (excluding natural sands and gravels) and Type 1 Unbound Mixtures to SHW Clause 803.

S5.1.4 Class A Graded Granular Materials may also include the Modified Type 1 Unbound Mixture specified in A10.1. This is the preferred unbound material. This type of unbound mixture cannot be used if direct trafficking of the backfill could occur during construction.

Class B – Granular materials

S5.1.5 Materials with a maximum of 10% by mass passing a 63 µm BS sieve.

Class C – Cohesive/granular materials

S5.1.6 Mixtures of granular, silt and clay materials with between 10% and 80% by mass passing a 63 µm BS sieve.

Class D – Cohesive materials

S5.1.7 Clay, silt or mixtures of clay and silt with at least 80% by mass passing a 63 µm BS sieve.

Class E – Unacceptable materials

S5.1.8 Materials listed as unacceptable in paragraphs 2 ii) and 3 of SHW Clause 601 cannot be used at any level in the permanent structure of any reinstatement. Materials classified as unacceptable are listed in A1.5.

FCRs and HBMs

S5.1.9 FCRs and HBMs, complying with A2.5.3 to A2.5.18 and A10.2 respectively, are permitted within the backfill as the entire layer or combined with any other permitted backfill materials, in any proportion, within any reinstatement.

- S5.1.10 The requirements of A1 apply to unbound backfill materials.
- S5.1.11 All backfill materials Classes A to D must be compacted in accordance with A8.

S5.2 **Alternative reinstatement materials (ARMs)**

- S5.2.1 ARMs may be used for the entire backfill layer, or any part thereof, in accordance with A9.

S5.3 **Additional requirements**

Frost heave susceptibility

- S5.3.1 Frost susceptible material is deemed to be material with a mean heave greater than 15 mm when tested in accordance with BS 812 – 124 (as amended by SHW Clause 801.8).
- S5.3.2 Where frost susceptible materials exist within 450 mm of the surface, such materials may be reinstated to the same levels but, generally, frost susceptible material must not be used within 450 mm of a road surface. However, 300 mm of wholly bituminous material is considered to provide adequate insulation and may be used as an alternative.
- S5.3.3 In the event of prior notification by the authority, where the existing depth of non-frost susceptible materials is more than 450 mm below the road surface and the authority requires such a thickness of non-frost susceptible material to be maintained, only non-frost susceptible materials can be used for the relevant depth.
- S5.3.4 All frost heave susceptibility testing must be carried out by a laboratory holding current UKAS accreditation for the specified method of testing, unless otherwise agreed.

Maximum particle size

- S5.3.5 The maximum particle size for granular materials used as backfill must comply with the following requirements:
- 1) All granular backfill materials must pass through a 75 mm BS sieve.
 - 2) All granular backfill materials used in the reinstatement of trenches less than 150 mm wide must pass through a 37.5 mm BS sieve.

Surround to apparatus as backfill

- S5.3.6 Where the excavation depth does not allow the use of a separate backfill layer, the sub-base layer must be laid directly onto the surround to apparatus. In such cases, the surround material represents backfill material and must be classified in accordance with S5.1 for the purposes of determining the requirements for sub-base reinstatement in accordance with S6.2.

Protective measures to apparatus

- S5.3.7 Preformed modules or other protective measures may be placed within the backfill, according to the undertaker's requirements.

Chalk

S5.3.8 Imported chalk materials used as backfill must comply with the following requirements:

- 1) The saturation moisture content must be determined before use.
- 2) The chalk must be laid and compacted to an approved compaction procedure developed in accordance with NG1.6 (4) and A9. The compaction procedure must be proven with chalk materials of similar saturation moisture content.

S5.3.9 Excavated chalk to be re-used as backfill must comply with the following requirements:

- 1) Excavated chalk must be stockpiled for re-use and must not be subjected to multiple handling.
- 2) During wet weather, excavated chalk must be protected against water ingress at all times.

S5.3.10 Chalk materials must be assessed by breaking up excavated fragments by hand or by driving a steel pin into unexcavated deposits, and classified in accordance with Table S5.1. If the classification falls between two densities, then the chalk must be assumed to be at the lower of the two densities.

Table S5.1 Suitability of chalk materials for use as backfill		
Chalk density	Physical assessment	Backfill suitability
High	Very difficult/impossible to break up by hand Difficult to hammer in steel pin.	Carriageways, footways & verges.
Medium	Some difficulty in breaking up by hand. Some effort needed to hammer in steel pin.	Footways & verges only.
Low	Easy to break up or crush by hand. Steel pin can be pushed in by hand.	Unsuitable for use in any reinstatement.
Notes to Table S5.1: 1) Chalk often contains flint inclusions and care should be taken to ensure that: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) the steel pin does not strike a flint b) the hand crushing sample does not contain any flints. 		

S5.3.11 Chalk materials must be compacted in accordance with A8.2.

S6 Flexible and composite roads

S6.1 Reinstatement methods

General

S6.1.1 The undertaker must carry out reinstatement in accordance with one of the following methods and should endeavour to achieve the greatest degree of immediate permanent reinstatement. Reinstatement methods are listed in A2.12 Table A2.10.

S6.1.2 Permitted materials and layer thickness are specified in A1 to A4, A9 and A10.

S6.1.3 Where the authority knows of any site with aggressive ground conditions it should advise undertakers in advance of the works so that appropriate measures may be taken.

Method A – All permanent reinstatement

S6.1.4 The excavation must be reinstated to a permanent standard at the first visit.

Method B – Permanent binder course reinstatement

S6.1.5 The backfill, sub-base, base and binder course must be reinstated to a permanent standard at the first visit.

S6.1.6 The permanent binder course material, or an alternative interim material, must be extended to the surface as the interim surface course, with or without a thin separating material layer of sand at the position of the binder course/surface course interface.

S6.1.7 On the second visit, all interim surfacing materials must be removed to the top of the binder course, typically by cold planing, and a permanent surface course must be laid.

S6.1.8 Where a sand separation layer is present, the sand must be removed, the surface brushed clean and a bond coat applied before reinstating the permanent surface course.

Method C – Permanent base reinstatement

S6.1.9 The backfill, sub-base and base must be reinstated to a permanent standard at the first visit.

S6.1.10 The interim surface course and part or all of the interim binder course, may be deferred set material. Part or all of the entire interim binder course may be an unbound granular material.

S6.1.11 On the second visit, all interim surfacing materials must be removed to the top of the base, and a permanent binder course and surface course must be laid.

Method D – Permanent sub-base reinstatement

S6.1.12 The backfill and sub-base must be reinstated to a permanent standard at the first visit

S6.1.13 The interim base must be granular and the interim surfacing must be in accordance with the requirements of S6.1.9 to S6.1.11.

S6.1.14 On the second visit, all interim materials must be removed to the top of the sub-base, and a permanent base, binder course and surface course laid.

Method E – Permanent reinstatement incorporating interim surface overlay

Not applicable

Other reinstatement methods

S6.1.15 S6.5 must be followed for small excavations and narrow trenches. For micro trenches, large diameter cores and work around ironwork, S6.6, S6.7 and S11.5 must be followed respectively.

Alternative reinstatement materials

S6.1.16 ARMs may be used in flexible and composite roads in accordance with A9.

S6.2 Sub-base reinstatement

General

S6.2.1 Permitted options are shown in A3.6, A4.5 and A4.6, subject to the following exceptions:

- 1) Sub-base equivalence: thickness of granular sub-bases may be reduced provided that the thickness of the bituminous binder course is increased proportionately, in accordance with S6.3.7.
- 2) Small openings and narrow trenches: in composite roads with a CBGM base, this material may also be used as a sub-base regardless of whether the existing sub-base is cement bound.

S6.3 Base reinstatement

General

S6.3.1 Permitted options are shown in A3 and A4, subject to the following exceptions:

CBGM base in flexible and composite roads

S6.3.2 All composite roads constructed with a base of CBGM, lean-mix concrete or equivalent must be reinstated with a CBGM base.

S6.3.3 CBGM base must comply with the aggregate requirements for MCHW clause 822, particle size distribution of the mixture in accordance with BS EN 14227 Part 1 CBGM 1 (0/20 or 0/14), R_{Rc} must be ≥ 80 as per A10.2.4 and the following strength requirements which are dependent on coarse aggregate type:

- 1) crushed rock aggregate: C8/10;
- 2) other sources of coarse aggregate (including gravel): C12/16

S6.3.4 Where a CBGM base is used, the reinstatement must:

- 1) be designed to be suitable for immediate overlay (see requirements in A10.2); or
- 2) have achieved a compressive strength of C3/4 (curing of samples used to determine the minimum compressive strength suitable for overlay must be representative of the site conditions); or
- 3) be trafficked and overlaid depending on the road type, as follows:
 - a) in Types 0 and 1 roads, the CBGM base may either be surfaced on the same day or allowed 7 days curing. In either case, the CBGM base must be allowed 7 days curing before trafficking.
 - b) in Types 2, 3 and 4 roads, the CBGM base may either be surfaced on the same day or allowed 3 days curing. If the surface is placed in the same day, the road may be opened to traffic the following day.

S6.3.5 In composite roads, the reinstated CBGM base must be laid flush with the top of the existing CBGM, lean-mix concrete or equivalent.

S6.3.6 Continuously reinforced concrete bases that have been connected with dowel bars are not covered in this Code. Special conditions will apply and the reinstatement method must be agreed with the authority.

Base equivalence

S6.3.7 In Type 3 and 4 flexible roads, the thickness of granular bases may be reduced provided that the thickness of the bituminous binder course is increased proportionately in accordance with the following requirements:

- 1) Each 10 mm increase in bituminous binder course thickness is equivalent to a 35 mm decrease in thickness of Type 1 Granular sub-base at base and/or sub-base levels and vice versa.
- 2) This equivalence rule may be applied to include the total replacement of all granular materials at both sub-base and base levels, subject to the following restrictions:
 - a) Binder course and surface course thickness in Type 3 and 4 roads are minimum values and must not be reduced by application of the 10:35 equivalence of bituminous/granular materials; and
 - b) Where part of a granular base and/or sub-base is to be replaced by additional binder course material, the remaining total thickness of granular material at base and/or sub-base level must not be less than 150 mm.

Modular materials within the excavation

- S6.3.8 Where cobbles or setts are encountered during excavation, they may be recovered and re-used for reinstatement of the relevant layer. Alternatively, and at the discretion of the undertaker, the layer may be reinstated using CBGM base laid to a thickness of 100 mm, or to match the original thickness, whichever is greater.
- S6.3.9 Modules, cobbles, setts, stones, rocks, or other large aggregate materials laid upright in an interlocking fashion, often termed 'penning', will exhibit a greater stiffness than an equivalent layer of cobbles/setts laid horizontally. Where such upright interlocking modules are encountered, the layer must be reinstated using CBGM base laid to a thickness of 100 mm, or to match the original thickness, whichever is greater.
- S6.3.10 Where surplus modules, cobbles or setts are removed from site, they remain the property of the authority. The undertaker must notify the authority and retain them for 10 days following such notification. Thereafter, the undertaker is free to dispose of them.
- S6.3.11 Where CBGM base is used at base level, it must be used in accordance with S6.3.2 to S6.3.6.

S6.4 Surface reinstatement

- S6.4.1 Permitted options are shown in A2 to A4 inclusive, subject to the following exceptions:

Hot rolled asphalt (HRA) surface

- S6.4.2 Where the existing surface course is HRA it must be reinstated in accordance with one of the HRA surface course options in A2.1.1, as appropriate for the type of road.

Stone mastic asphalt (SMA) and thin surface course systems (TSCS)

- S6.4.3 Where the existing surface course is SMA or a TSCS the road must be reinstated with either SMA surface course or, at the authority's request, a TSCS or, by agreement, with HRA, all subject to the following requirements:
- 1) Generic SMA or TSCS must match the existing nominal aggregate size of the existing surface course material with the exception that 10 mm nominal aggregate size must be used to reinstate SMA with 20 mm and 14 mm nominal aggregate size in situations where the hand-laying method is adopted.
 - 2) The standard combined thickness of binder course and SMA surface course shown in A3.0 to A3.5 is 100 mm.
 - 3) HRA must comply with the requirements of S6.4.2.
- S6.4.4 Edge and base preparation for permanent SMA reinstatements must be as follows:
- 1) All edges must be saw cut or trimmed by saw, to a depth of 40 mm or the thickness of the surface course, before permanent reinstatement.

2) A certified bond coat (BS 594987 Table 2) must be applied in accordance with S6.8. In the event that no such approvals have been issued they must not be used. Approval must not be withheld unreasonably.

3) An edge sealant must be applied in accordance with S6.8.7.

S6.4.5 Where the existing surface is a TSCS and the authority does not want the reinstatement to be completed using SMA, the authority must contact the undertaker and the surfacing material must be agreed in advance.

S6.4.6 Where the authority has a policy to grit or otherwise treat newly laid SMA surfaces, it must advise the undertaker of the required method and materials and the undertaker must comply.

Asphalt concrete surface course materials

S6.4.7 Where the existing surface course is asphalt concrete it may be reinstated with any of the surface course options in A2 to A4.

S6.4.8 Where used, asphalt concrete surface course materials must be AC 10 close surf, laid 40 mm thick.

Asphalt concrete binder course materials

S6.4.9 Where asphalt concrete binder course is to be used as the running surface for more than 6 months, the usual supplier-declared target binder content must be increased by 0.5%.

Other bituminous materials

S6.4.10 Where it is necessary to use bituminous materials not included in A2, they must be used in accordance with the following:

S6.4.11 General requirements

1) Where existing road surfaces have been treated or constructed with high friction surfaces, porous asphalt or coloured surfaces, and local custom has been to complete all previous resurfacing with like materials, permanent reinstatement must be carried out in accordance with the following requirements:

a) High friction surfaces must be permanently reinstated with like materials, or an agreed alternative, in accordance with S6.4.12.

b) In the event of notification by the authority, the reinstatement of any existing porous asphalt surface course (excluding small reinstatements) must be carried out in accordance with the authority's requirements. Small reinstatements must be reinstated as detailed in S6.5.

c) Coloured surfaces must be permanently reinstated with like materials, or an agreed alternative material, in accordance with S6.4.14.

d) Specific local authority SMA must be permanently reinstated with SMA complying with S6.4.3 to S6.4.6. If the authority does not want the reinstatement to be completed using SMA, it must contact the undertaker to agree on the surfacing material to be used.

- 2) Where the overall area is sufficiently large to facilitate machine laying, local custom has been to complete all previous resurfacing with like materials, and the authority wishes to request the use of like materials:
 - a) the authority must notify the undertaker accordingly at the planning or notice stage, or in the case of immediate works, before the permanent reinstatement.
 - b) When requested by the undertaker, the authority must identify an appropriate source of suitable like or alternative materials, wherever possible. Where the authority is unable to identify an appropriate source of suitable material, the undertaker must provide a suitable material on the basis of best reasonable endeavours.
 - c) Where existing road surfaces have been treated or constructed with high friction surfaces, porous asphalt or coloured surfaces, and local custom has not been to complete all previous resurfacing with like materials, the undertaker must consult with the authority to determine appropriate reinstatement requirements.
 - d) Where other specialist surfacing materials not included in A2 or S6.4.11 above have been used, in general they may be permanently reinstated in accordance with S6.4.15.

S6.4.12

High friction surfaces

- 1) High friction surfaces must be permanently reinstated with a like material within 15 working days following the date of completion of the reinstatement, unless the prevailing weather conditions or other site circumstances mitigate against successful application of the surfacing. Where this occurs, the permanent reinstatement must be deferred until unfavourable weather conditions or other site circumstances abate. Site circumstances that justify delaying the reinstatement of a high friction surface include the need for the new surface course material to be trafficked and/or aged prior to the application of a cold-applied material if this is specified by the system supplier.
- 2) Before applying any permanent or interim friction surfacing, warning signs must be displayed indicating a potentially slippery road surface.
- 3) All high friction materials must have a certificate from a Product Acceptance Scheme. These materials must be laid in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions by a contractor with suitable experience, as required by the Product Acceptance Scheme for such materials.
- 4) Some high friction surfacing materials have a limited manufacturer's guarantee and may be subject to wear and abrasion during the guarantee period. However, the reinstated area must not be inferior to the adjoining surface during the guarantee period.

S6.4.13 *Porous asphalt (small reinstatements)*

- 1) Small reinstatements that do not adversely affect the overall drainage characteristics of the site may be reinstated using SMA subject to the following:
 - a) Multiple small reinstatements using SMA must not be closer than 3 m to each other in the principal direction of fall or surface drainage flow.
 - b) Porous asphalt surface courses must be reinstated to nominally match the thickness of the existing layer.
 - c) The binder course of porous asphalt reinstatements must be HRA.
 - d) All edges must be saw cut or trimmed by saw to a minimum depth of 50 mm (or the thickness of the surface course, if greater), prior to permanent reinstatement.

S6.4.14 *Coloured surfaces*

- 1) Coloured surfaces must be permanently reinstated using like materials of equivalent type and similar colour, subject to the following requirements:
 - a) Where the coloured surfacing is overlaid onto a road surface, a coloured overlay must be applied to the same thickness.
 - b) Where the coloured surfacing is laid full depth, a coloured material must be laid to the same thickness wherever possible and practicable. Where it is not possible or practicable, the coloured surfacing must be reinstated by agreement.
 - c) Some high friction surfacing materials that are coloured have a limited manufacturer's guarantee and may be subject to wear and abrasion during the guarantee period. However, the reinstated area must not be inferior to the adjoining surface during the guarantee period.

S6.4.15 *Other specialist surfacing materials*

- 1) Specialist surfaces not included in A2 or S6.4.11 must generally be reinstated with SMA.
- 2) All other surfacing materials not covered above, including grouted bituminous materials, traffic calming materials, surface treatments etc., must be permanently reinstated by agreement.

Surface treatments

- S6.4.16 In Types 0, 1 & 2 roads, where an existing surface treatment is readily apparent, the undertaker must reinstate the surface course with HRA as per S6.4.2 unless otherwise requested by the authority. In addition, the undertaker must apply an equivalent surface treatment if practicable and requested by the authority. Where requested by the authority, an appropriate timing and methodology for the works must be jointly agreed in accordance with national specifications and Codes of Practice (e.g. Road Note 39).

S6.4.17 Unless otherwise requested by the authority, surface dressing or other surface treatment is not required in Types 3 & 4 roads when any binder course and surface course option permitted by S6.4 is laid. When requested by the authority, the surfacing layer and equivalent surface dressing or other surface treatment must be agreed in advance of the works.

Coated chippings

S6.4.18 Pre-coated chippings must be as specified in A2.

S6.4.19 Where pre-coated chippings are to be embedded into a road surface, they must be spread to give a chipping density reasonably matching that of the existing surface, notwithstanding the requirements for surface texture specified in S2.6.

Composite roads

S6.4.20 The total combined thickness of the reinstated binder course and surface course must match the existing bituminous thickness. Wherever practicable, the required surface course thickness should be maintained by adjustment of the binder course thickness.

S6.5 **Small excavations, narrow trenches and access chamber covers**

General

S6.5.1 A permanent surface course material in accordance with A2 may be laid in place of a permanent binder course material at base and/or binder course level:

- 1) in small excavations and narrow trenches (as defined in S1.5.3 and S1.5.5); and
- 2) within 350 mm of access chamber covers.

S6.5.2 In all other cases, reinstatement in small excavations and narrow trenches must comply with the relevant clauses in S6.5.

Compaction

S6.5.3 The preferred method for compaction in small excavations and narrow trenches is in accordance with S10. This must be followed unless there are restrictions present, such as kerbs, ironwork, street furniture, or the reinstatement dimensions do not allow it. Where these restrictions exist, hand compaction may be used, but only if demonstrated to be appropriate. It is deemed appropriate if:

- 1) the width of the reinstatement is the width of the compaction tool sole plate plus a minimum of 30 mm; and
- 2) the performance requirements of S2 are met, unless agreed otherwise with the authority.

S6.5.4 In addition, it is deemed appropriate:

- 1) if the performance requirements in S10 can be demonstrated via coring;
or
- 2) if the trench is too small to obtain cores to demonstrate air voids compliance (as per S10), this must be demonstrated in a location that can be tested (this is deemed suitable if carried out in effectively the same manner, using the same material(s) and compaction method in adjacent sections of reinstatement works); or
- 3) where there is no suitable location to demonstrate compliance, in which case the use of a hand compaction method and its application must be by agreement with the authority.

Materials

- S6.5.5** For narrow trenches and small excavations, materials specified in the following sections must be used:
- S6.2 Sub-base reinstatement
 - S6.3 Base reinstatement
 - S6.4 Surface reinstatement
- S6.5.6** In addition, Polymer Modified Mastic Asphalt (PMMA) complying with A2.5.1 may be used. This material is a flowable asphalt and typically used around ironwork. No compaction is needed, so demonstrating compliance with S10 is not appropriate.
- S6.5.7** PMMA may be used as bedding, backfill and/or surfacing material as specified in the following clauses. PMMA must be used within the stated location and limitations (including maximum width of the reinstatement) as detailed in the Product Acceptance Scheme certificate.
- S6.5.8** Reinstatements using PMMA must meet the requirements of S2, unless agreed otherwise with the authority.
- S6.5.9** When PMMA is used, Installation and Quality Control Procedures for all systems must be in accordance with an approved certificate from a Product Acceptance Scheme for each system, and with the current method statement. Quality assurance information and the results of all quality control checks carried out on site by the undertaker must be compiled in accordance with the requirements of the certificate.
- S6.5.10** Before installing any bedding, backfill or surfacing material, the receiving surface must be free of loose material and the area must be free of debris, oil, grease, dust or other visible contaminants. All exposed edges and joints must be primed to achieve a proper bond with the existing surface (see S6.8.6).
- S6.5.11** *PMMA installation*
- 1) Installation of PMMA can only be carried out in dry conditions at a temperature above -5°C, unless otherwise stated in the product certification.
 - 2) Ambient and road surface temperatures, including maximum and minimum temperatures, must be recorded during the installation process for future reference.

- 3) PMMA can be supplied in block form for re-melting on site or in molten form in purpose built hot charge transporters. All heating equipment must be suitable for re-melting or transporting the material as appropriate and must be capable of maintaining the mix at the manufacturer's recommended temperature.
- 4) The PMMA must be placed into the reinstatement leaving a smooth finish with no gaps. The PMMA is left to stiffen and is assessed in accordance with the method of installation detailed in the Product Acceptance Scheme certificate.
- 5) All exposed edges and joints must be primed to achieve a bond with the existing surface.
- 6) PMMA surfacing must be applied in a single layer of 30 to 50 mm thick, and within the manufacturer's recommended temperature range. It must be spread to finish flush with the surrounding surfacing.
- 7) PMMA must be finished with a suitable treatment to provide the necessary skid resistance. This may be 6, 14 or 20 mm bitumen coated chippings or 1 to 3 mm calcined bauxite to the specified PSV. These treatments are applied directly to the hot material and when suitably cooled, lightly rolled or tamped to ensure adequate embedment.
- 8) PMMA must be allowed to cool to ambient temperature before opening to traffic, as specified in the Product Acceptance Scheme certificate. During the cooling period no disturbance or trafficking of the system is permitted. Assisted cooling during the installation by means of industrial fans may be required. The curing period must be adjusted for the prevailing weather conditions.
- 9) Excess aggregate must be removed at the end of the cooling period but before opening to traffic.

S6.6 Micro trenching

General

S6.6.1 Micro trenching may be carried out by agreement between the undertaker and the authority. The use of micro trenches cannot be unreasonably withheld by any authority and may only be denied for engineering reasons.

S6.6.2 This section does not apply to micro trenching in verges (S9).

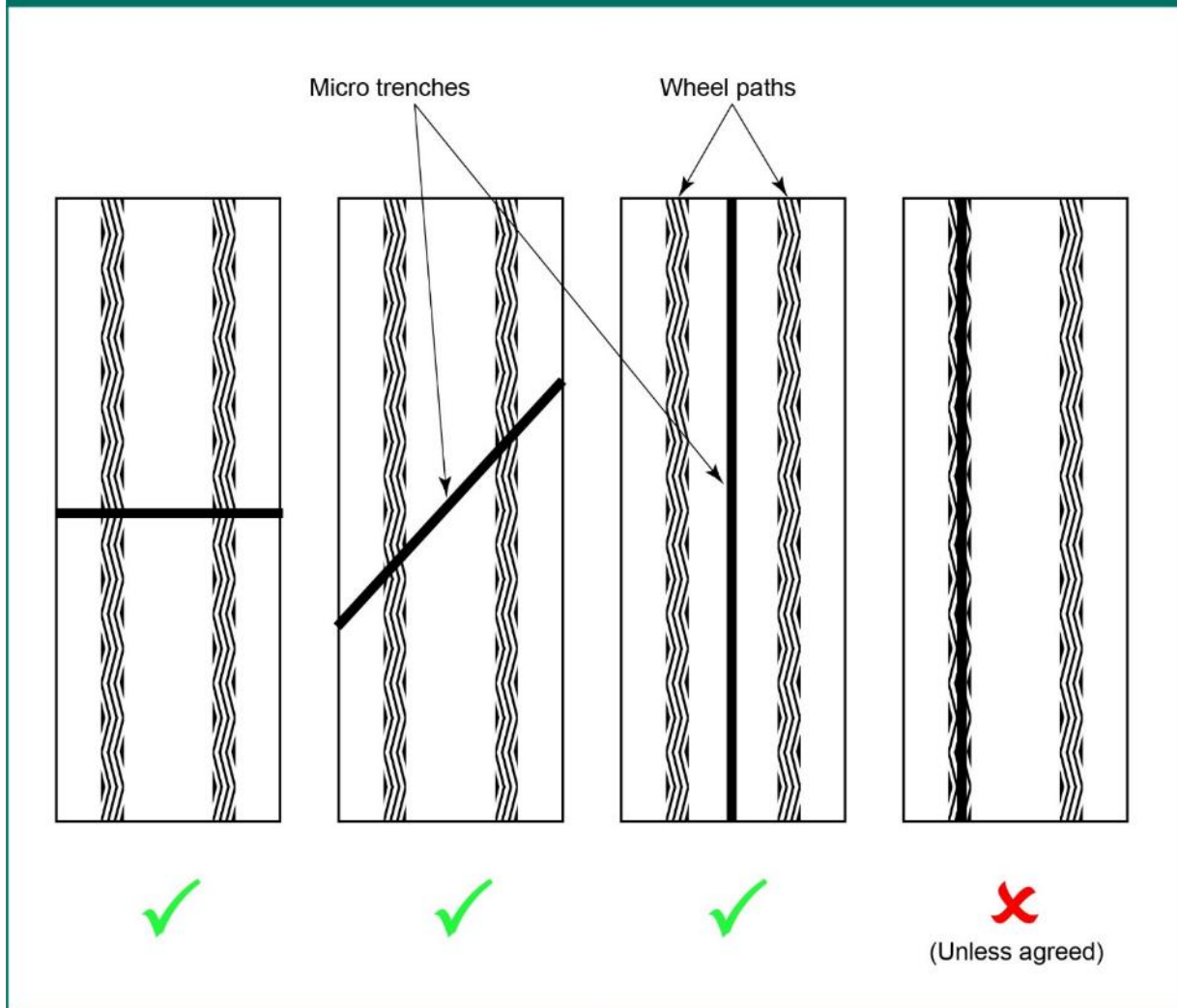
Excavation/cleaning

S6.6.3 Slots must be cut to the width of the duct(s) to be accommodated plus a minimum of 2 mm. The slot must not exceed 60 mm in width.

S6.6.4 The minimum depth is 150 mm.

S6.6.5 The line of a micro trench must be carefully planned before any excavation takes place. Micro trenches must not be placed under a wheel track zone in the direction of travel without the agreement of the authority (see Figure S6.1).

Figure S6.1 Location of micro trenches



- S6.6.6 After cutting to the required depth, the excavation must be cleaned to produce a clear and dry slot.
- S6.6.7 Any large pieces of aggregate or agglomerations of aggregate protruding into the slot after the initial cleaning must be removed or hammered into the base of the slot so that it does not interfere with installation of the duct/cable. This can be done using a percussive tool with a narrow tip.
- S6.6.8 Where cutting or clearing the micro trench causes damage (e.g. visible cracking) and/or significant vertical or lateral disruption to the surrounding surface, the excavation must be carried out as per S3 and must be reinstated in accordance with S6.2, S6.3 and S6.4 or S6.5, as appropriate. Significant vertical disruption is where the surface has been raised or depressed by more than 6 mm, in line with S2.2.1 to S2.2.3. It is not necessary to prescribe a limit for lateral disruption as the requirements of S6.8.6 will prevail. However, the frequency of lateral disruptions must be monitored to determine their significance.

Installation of ducts/cables

- S6.6.9 The duct/cable must be installed in the base of the slot and held in place using clips, plugs of high density foam, or other suitable means.
- S6.6.10 The finished level of the duct/cable must not vary from the agreed depth by more than 20 mm.
- S6.6.11 The duct/cable must incorporate a tracer (often an integral metal wire) to facilitate later detection/location.

Backfilling and reinstatement

- S6.6.12 Once the duct/cable and locating strips have been installed, the trench must be reinstated in two or three courses, as follows.
- Course 1 (conditional only – see below) – granular bedding material
 - Course 2 – indicator infill material
 - Course 3 – surface infill material
- S6.6.13 When the depth of the micro trench after installation of the duct/cable is greater than the adjacent depth of bound materials, granular bedding material or indicator infill material must be used up to the base of the adjacent bound layers.
- S6.6.14 The indicator and surface infill material must be used within the bound materials.
- S6.6.15 If the depth of the micro trench is fully within the bound layers after installation of the duct/cable, only indicator and surface infill material need to be used.
- S6.6.16 Granular bedding is not permitted within the bound layers of the adjacent structure.

Installation

- S6.6.17 *Course 1 – Granular bedding material*
- 1) Granular bedding material must be vibrated into place using appropriate compaction equipment. A vibrating plate attached to a steel block with dimensions appropriate to the width of trench and depth to the top of Course 1 may be used for this purpose.
 - 2) If the granular bedding material settles during vibration such that voids form below the foot of the vibrating equipment, it must be topped up and re-vibrated as appropriate.
- S6.6.18 *Course 2 – Indicator infill material*
- 1) This material must be installed using an appropriately shaped funnel or nozzle to completely fill the trench to within 15 mm to 10 mm of the finished surface level, to create an effective bond on both sides of the slot.
 - 2) It must be distinctively coloured to help prevent future works from damaging services in the micro trench.

S6.6.19

Course 3 – Surface infill material:

- 1) This is installed above the indicator infill material using an appropriately shaped shoe to completely fill the remaining depth of the trench, to restore the surface profile and to form an overlap seal onto the asphalt surface each side. Unless requested otherwise by the authority, this material must be black or dark grey in colour.
- 2) The overlapping element of the surface infill material must be no more than 3 mm thick. The width of the finished reinstatement must be the slot width plus 20 mm either side up to a maximum overall width of 100 mm.
- 3) In carriageways and cycle tracks, prior to setting, Course 3 must be over scattered with a 3 mm dry, dust free, hard stone aggregate (with a minimum initial PSV of 60) to provide early life skid resistance and texture depth.
- 4) In footways and footpaths, the 3 mm dry, dust free, hard stone aggregate (with a minimum initial PSV of 60) may only be used if requested by the authority.
- 5) Indicator and surface infill materials must be made of the same base resin material and be compatible with each other.

Materials specification

S6.6.20

Materials used for reinstating micro trenches must comply with A2.6.

S6.7

Large diameter cores

S6.7.1

Large diameter coring is a technique whereby a core greater than 150 mm diameter is cut out of the bound layers of the road surface in one piece and stored for re-use when reinstating the road. Excavation of the underlying unbound material is typically accomplished by vacuum extraction. After work on the apparatus is complete, the unbound material is replaced and compacted, and the extracted core is re-fitted to the road in its original orientation and bonded to the surrounding surface. Reinstatement by re-using the extracted core is a specialist process and is described in S6.7.17.

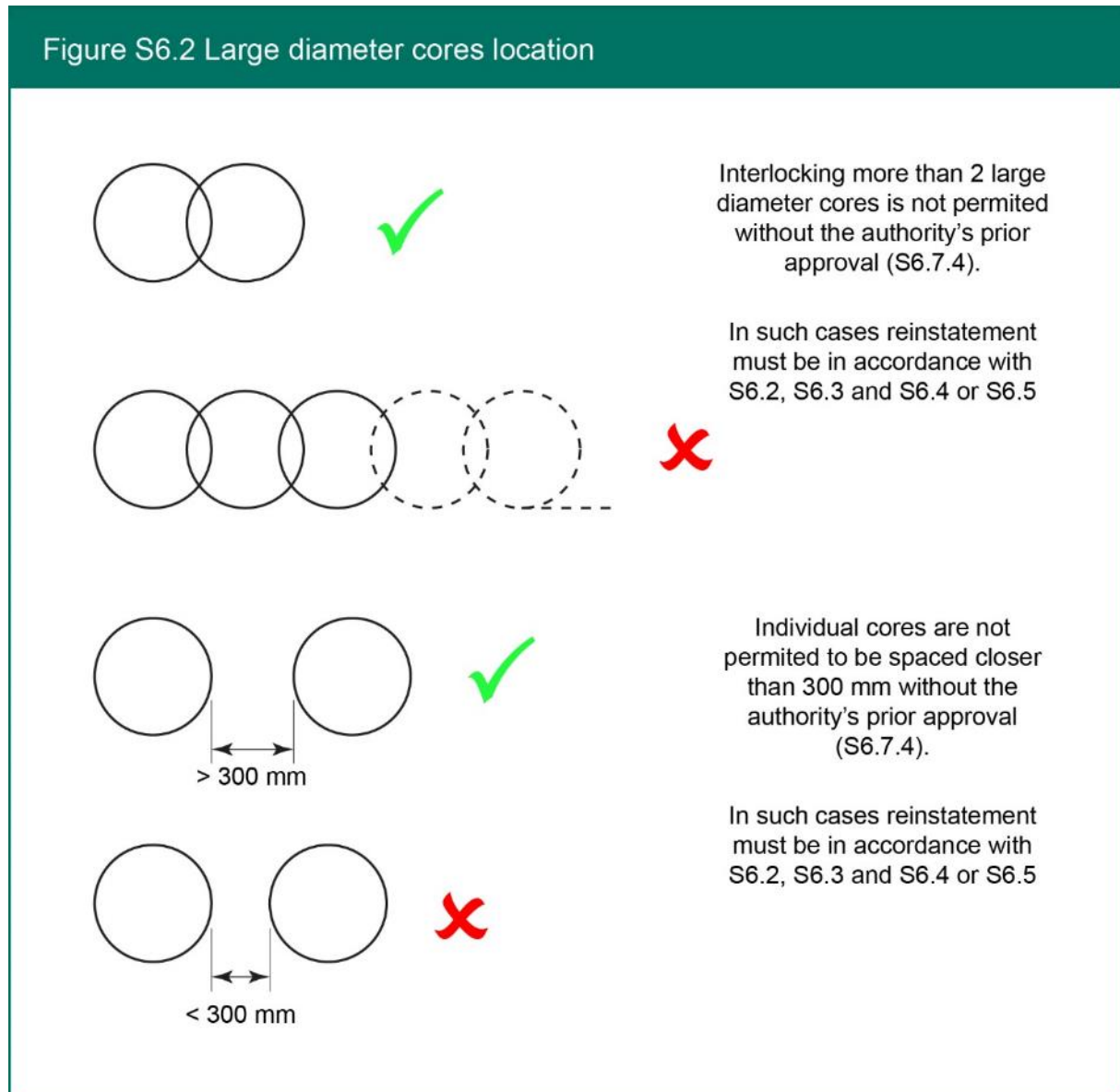
S6.7.2

Large diameter coring is particularly useful for gaining access to individual pieces of apparatus such as buried valves, and it is considerably quicker than conventional excavation and reinstatement methods. The technique should only be considered where the location of buried apparatus is precisely known. It is not permitted where there is a risk of cutting through services located within the bound layers.

S6.7.3

The method of reinstatement by core re-use is only permitted for single cores, two overlapping cores, or multiple cores with a minimum clear separation between core perimeters of 300 mm. The reason for these limitations is that three or more overlapping cores present too many bonded cuts to guarantee the integrity of the reinstated surface while very closely spaced cores create compaction problems in the unbound layers.

- S6.7.4 As such, where there are three or more overlapping cores or where the separation between multiple cores is less than 300 mm, core re-use is not permitted (unless agreed to by the authority). Where this is the case, reinstatement must be carried out in accordance with S6.2, S6.3 and S6.4 or S6.5, as appropriate. Excavations resulting from aborted coring works must be considered as large diameter cores within the above.



- S6.7.5 Where additional cores are extracted during the same day, the first core must be reinstated before excavating any further cores when the additional cores are within 600 mm of the original core.

Coring and removal of large diameter cores

- S6.7.6 Before cutting the main core, a pilot core (not exceeding 100 mm diameter and located in the centre of the main core) must be taken to determine the depth of the bound layers (or the slab in an unreinforced concrete road). If the depth of the bound layers/concrete slab is less than 100 mm, reinstatement by core re-use is not permitted.

S6.7.7 Temporary location and alignment marks should be made on the road surface before cutting the main core to ensure that it can be replaced in its original orientation. Care must be taken when cutting surface layers to avoid undue damage to the surrounding surface and binder course.

S6.7.8 Large diameter coring must only be undertaken with purpose-designed equipment and in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. The cutter must be positioned perpendicular to the surface and extended to a depth that ensures that all the bound layers are removed as a single core.

S6.7.9 Care must be taken to minimise dust and debris when core cutting. Water used for cooling the cutter must not contaminate water courses. Where the gradient or camber is significant, this must be considered as part of the overall site-specific risk assessment to ensure the operation can be safely completed.

S6.7.10 Once the core has been removed a further check must be undertaken to ensure that the depth of the bound layers is at least 100 mm around the full circumference of the core. If the depth is found to be less than 100 mm, reinstatement by re-using the core is not permitted.

S6.7.11 *Excavation:*

- 1) Excavation must be carried out in accordance with S3 of this Code. Material may be removed by conventional excavation methods or by air lance and/or vacuum excavation methods. Irrespective of the method of excavation, care must be taken to avoid undermining the adjoining structure.
- 2) Where undermining of the adjoining structure does occur, reinstatement by re-using the core is not permitted and reinstatement must be carried out in accordance with S6.2, S6.3 and S6.4 or S6.5, as appropriate. This may require further excavation of the bound layers, in accordance with S3, to enable compaction of the underlying layers.

Materials

S6.7.12 *Bonding material for large diameter core reinstatement*

- 1) A bonding material certified by a Product Acceptance Scheme must be used. It must meet the requirements of BS 6319: Testing of resin and polymer/cement compositions for use in construction (Parts 3, 4 &7) and BS EN 12390 - 3 (Testing concrete - Compressive Strength).
- 2) The manufacturer's instructions must be followed for the use, preparation and application of the bonding material, in accordance with the Product Acceptance Scheme.

Backfill and granular sub-base compaction

S6.7.13 Backfill must be selected and placed in accordance with S5.

S6.7.14 Granular sub-base material must be placed in accordance with S6.2. If the sub-base is bound it will be extracted as part of the core and reinstated in accordance with S6.7.17.

S6.7.15 A layer of pea gravel may be used to aid levelling of the core. The layer must not exceed 50 mm in thickness at any point.

Core reinstatement and bonding

S6.7.16 Suitability of extracted core for re-use

- 1) If the core is damaged, it cannot be re-used, and the opening must be reinstated in accordance with S6.2, S6.3 and S6.4 or S6.5, as appropriate.
- 2) A core is unacceptable for permanent reinstatement where any of the following conditions exist:
 - a) It contains any vertical open cracks ≥ 3 mm wide when measured on the face of the core; or
 - b) Horizontal delamination is present in any layer in the core; or
 - c) The core is less than 100 mm deep.
- 3) If there is any doubt over the integrity of the core, core re-use is not permitted and it must be reinstated in accordance with S6.2, S6.3 and S6.4 or S6.5, whichever are applicable.

S6.7.17 *Reinstatement of removed large diameter core*

- 1) Large diameter cores must be prepared in accordance with the Product Acceptance Scheme of the bonding agent, orientated to their original alignment, and bonded in-situ.
- 2) The procedure for reinstatement must be included in the method statement for the works which must be available if requested by the authority.
- 3) The core must be reinstated so that it is as flat and as flush as possible with the surrounding surfaces. The construction tolerance at the edges of the reinstatement is 5 mm maximum at any time within the guarantee period.
- 4) Intervention is required if this tolerance is exceeded or there is any significant visual deterioration in the surface of the core compared with the surrounding surface.

S6.7.18 *Records*

- 1) A record containing the location and details of all large diameter cores must be registered within the relevant street works notice or permit.
- 2) Each core must be registered as an individual site within the works. For example, for a 600 mm diameter core, reinstatement measures (as registered on the street works notice or permit) should record a measure of 0.6 m x 0.6 m per core extracted.
- 3) There should also be a comment recorded in the works description area of the notice/permit, for example, "Large diameter core hole(s) outside No 1 High Street".

S6.8 Base and edge preparation

Base preparation

- S6.8.1 All surfaces must be free of contamination before applying the bond coat. This is especially important after the removal of any sand separation layer.

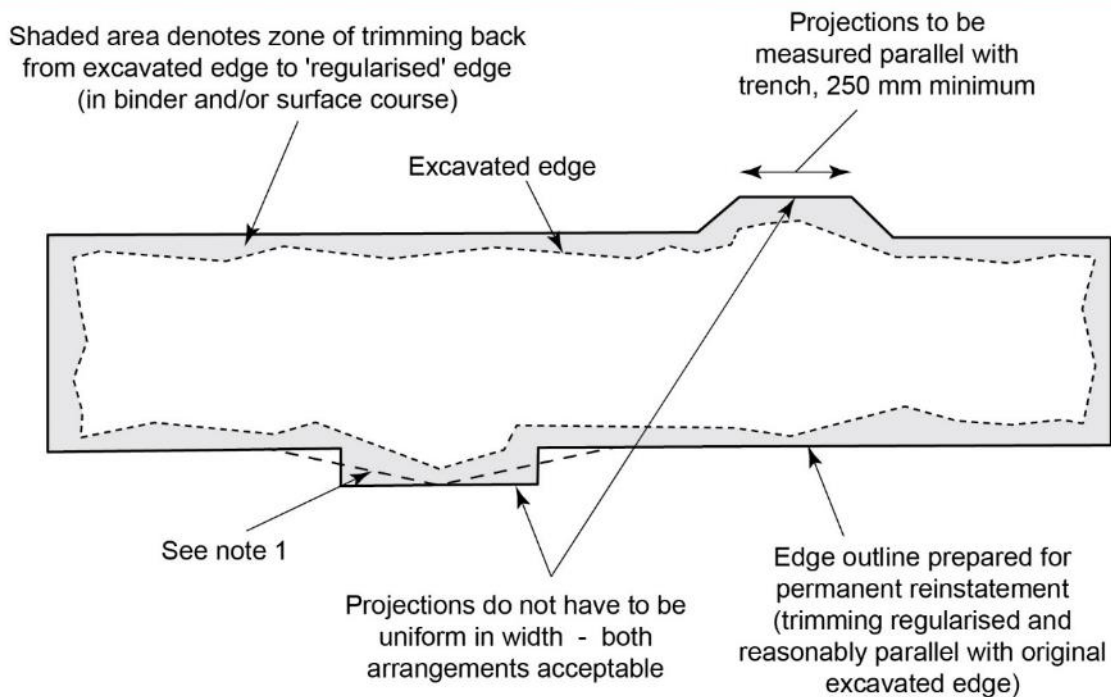
- S6.8.2 A bond coat must be applied to the surface of all bound layers before overlaying in all circumstances.
- S6.8.3 The bond coat must be applied at a rate that ensures a residual bitumen content of 0.15 kg/m².
- S6.8.4 Multiple lifts of the same material laid during a single visit on the same day do not require treatment between lifts. However, a bond coat must be applied before placing the permanent surface course for work carried out in accordance with S6.5.
- S6.8.5 A bitumen emulsion edge sealant may be used as a bond coat in small excavations and narrow trenches.

Edge preparation

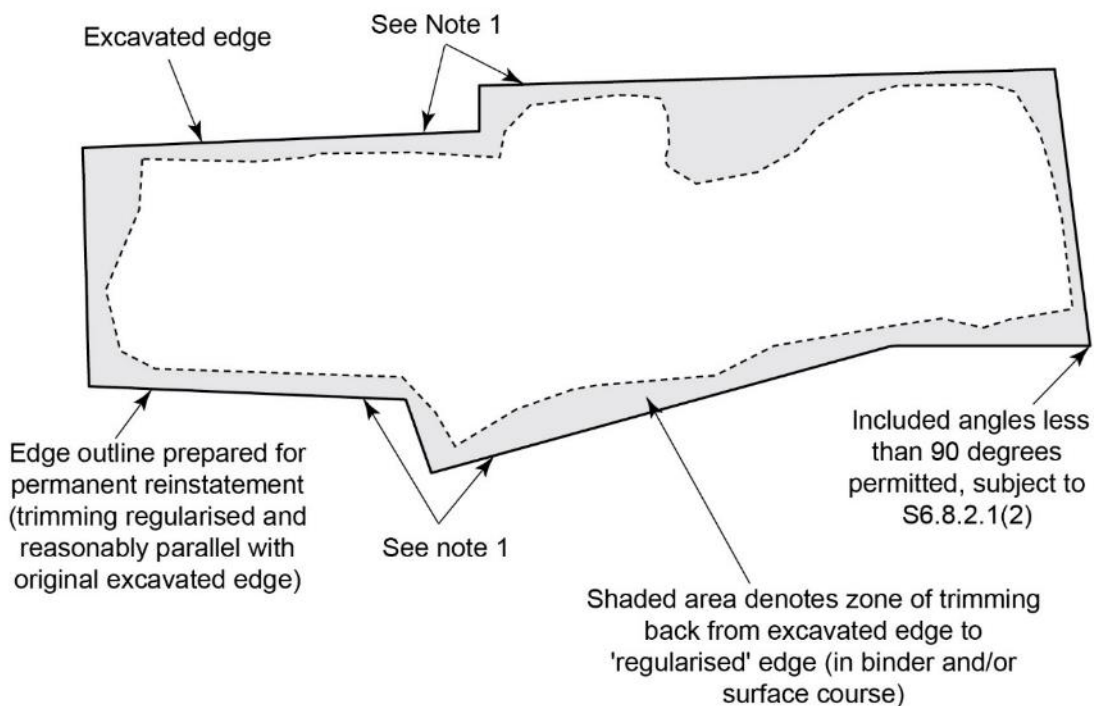
S6.8.6 *Edge regularity*

- 1) Where the existing surface is a bound material, the edges of excavations at binder course and/or surface course level must meet the following requirements:
 - a) Micro trenches must comply with S6.6.
 - b) Large diameter core excavations must comply with S6.7.
 - c) For all excavations other than micro trenches and large diameter cores, all edges must be saw cut or trimmed by saw to produce edges that are essentially straight, smooth and vertical to enable compaction of the reinstatement materials.
 - i. Overlapping edge cuts and corner cut outs should be kept to a minimum. All cuts extending into the existing surface must be filled with a flexible bituminous sealant.
 - ii. Internal corners should generally be 90° or more and must not be less than 80°. Where internal corners are less than 90° then compaction equipment must be suitable for achieving compaction in the corners.
 - iii. There is no requirement to trim the sides of trenches solely to provide a uniform width provided that individual projections are not less than 250 mm long when measured parallel to the notional centreline of the trench. See Figure S6.3 (Example 1).
 - iv. There is no requirement to trim small excavations solely to provide a square or rectangular shape. Any shape, having no projection less than 250 mm long, may be considered to be regular. See Figure S6.3 (Example 2).

Figure S6.3 Examples of prepared edge



Example 1 - Longer trench opening



Example 2 - Smaller patch opening

Note 1: Alternative trimmed edge outline avoids squared-off areas and improves ease of compaction.

S6.8.7

Edge sealant

- 1) For all excavations other than micro trenches, all edges must be adequately prepared before applying edge sealant. This requires:
 - a) the removal of all excess water from the cut face.
 - b) all bound vertical edges to be free of contamination, loose material, slurry and/or dust, with any cut face of the aggregate in existing layers clearly visible.
 - c) any additional steps detailed in the manufacturer's instructions to be followed when using proprietary products.
- 2) For reinstatement of all excavations other than micro trenches, whether interim or permanent, the top 100 mm at least, of all bound vertical edges at surface and binder course levels (and the equivalent area on kerbs and exposed fixed features) must be painted with an edge sealant or prepared with an edge sealing system. No significant splashing, spillage or deliberate over painting of the adjacent road surface is permitted.
- 3) The edge sealant or edge sealing system must comply with the following:
 - a) hot bituminous binder must have a penetration of not less than 40 pen;
 - b) hot elastomeric polymer-modified bituminous binder must comply with BS EN 14023 with a penetration of not less than 40 pen;
 - c) if hot bituminous binder is not used, cold applied thixotropic bituminous compound of similar bitumen or polymer-modified bitumen grade may be used;
 - d) polymer-modified adhesive bitumen strip must have a minimum thickness of 2 mm and must adhere to both cold and warm upstanding edges when the asphalt is applied. The product must be compatible with the material(s) installation process.

S6.8.8

Overbanding

- 1) Overbanding may be used in reinstatements, including remedial works (see S12.3.3) to improve durability.
- 2) Overbanding must be at least 3 mm wide, no wider than 40 mm, and be no more than 3 mm thick at the surface.
- 3) The overbanding system must have a current certificate by a Product Acceptance Scheme. Alternative certification is required to confirm suitability of use of the overbanding product for its in-service use.
- 4) Hot or cold applied systems may be used, subject to the manufacturer's recommendations.
- 5) Treatments must be black in colour, unless otherwise directed by the authority.
- 6) The minimum PSV for chippings applied to the repair systems is as specified for surfacing (see S2).

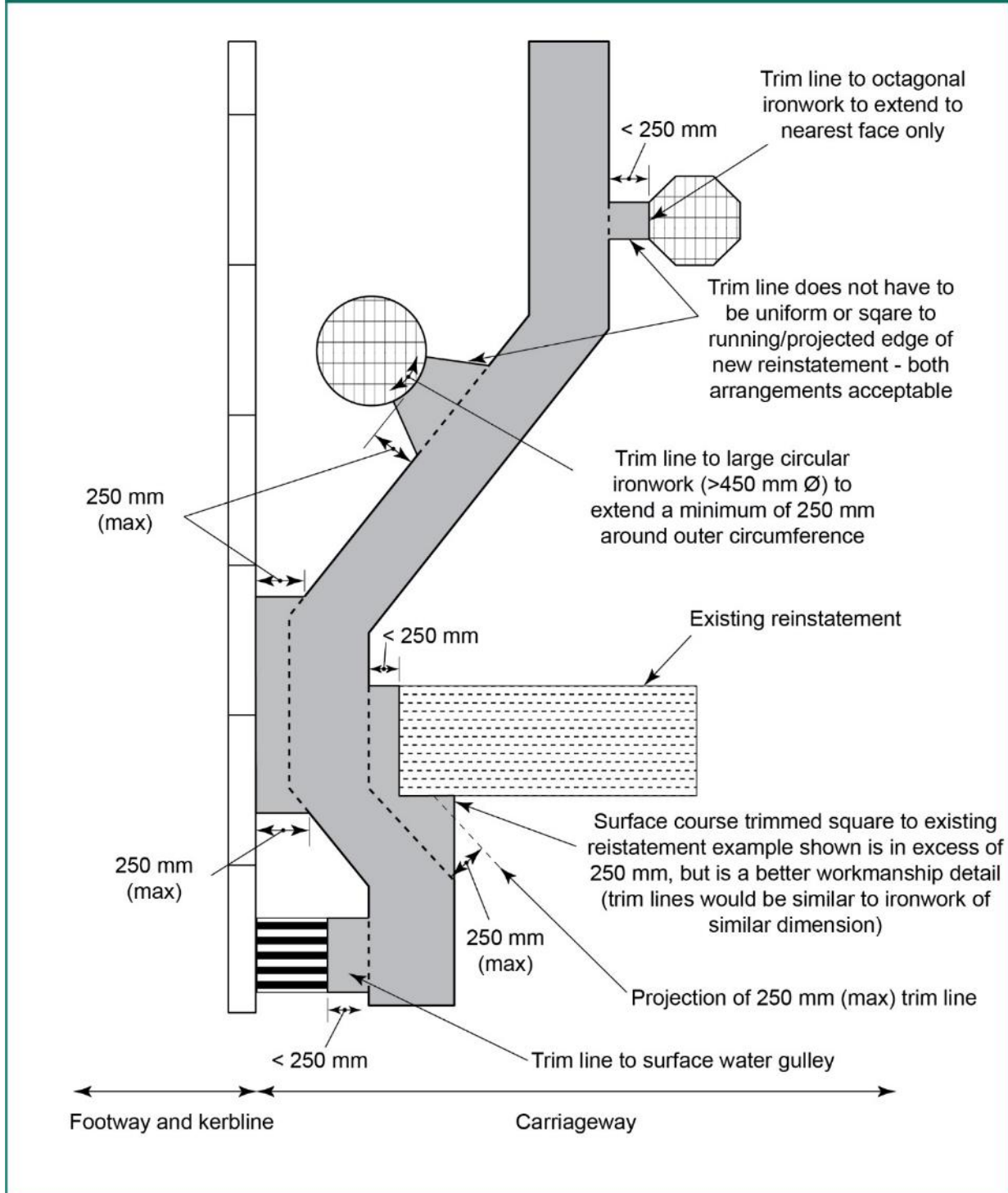
- 7) The initial skid resistance must be ≥ 55 SRV as measured by the pendulum tester using the narrow slider in accordance with BS EN 13036-4.
- 8) Installation and Quality Control Procedures for all systems must be in accordance with the Product Acceptance Scheme certificate for each system and the current Method Statement. The results of all quality control checks carried out on site by the undertaker and quality assurance information must be compiled in accordance with the requirements of the certificate.
- 9) Preparation must be in accordance with the installation method statement and must include cleaning and removal of debris and contamination. The substrate must be dried fully before applying crack and/or joint treatment.
- 10) Overbanding must not be used as a substitute for edge sealing.

S6.8.9

Proximity to road edges and fixed features

- 1) Where the trimmed edge of any excavation is within 250 mm of the road edge, kerbing, other fixed features or another reinstatement, the trim-line must be extended to the interface with the road edge, kerbing etc. See Figure S6.4
- 2) The additional reinstatement area required by extending the trim-line may be confined to the surface course provided the lower layers have not been damaged.
- 3) Where an existing fixed feature is immediately adjacent to another (e.g. road gully, stop-cock valve cover, etc.) material selection must be appropriate to ensure adequate compaction and surface profile – S2.2.3 refers.

Figure S6.4 Edge requirements and trim lines in carriageways

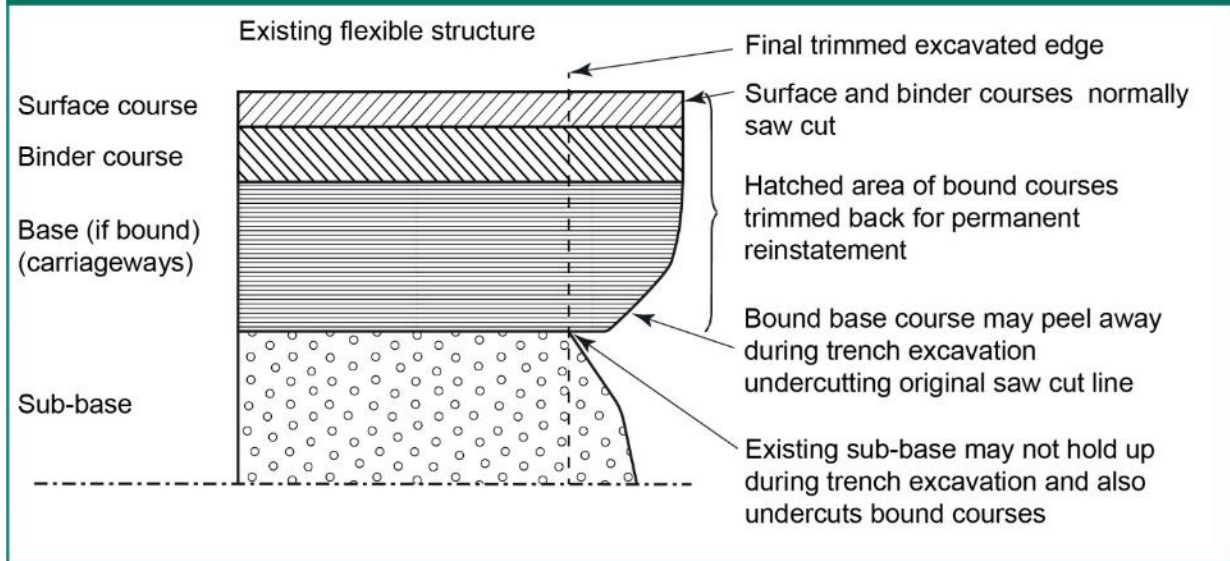


S6.8.10

Undercutting

- 1) All bound edges must be fairly smooth and vertical with no significant undercutting, see Figure S6.5.

Figure S6.5 Example of need for trimback due to undercutting

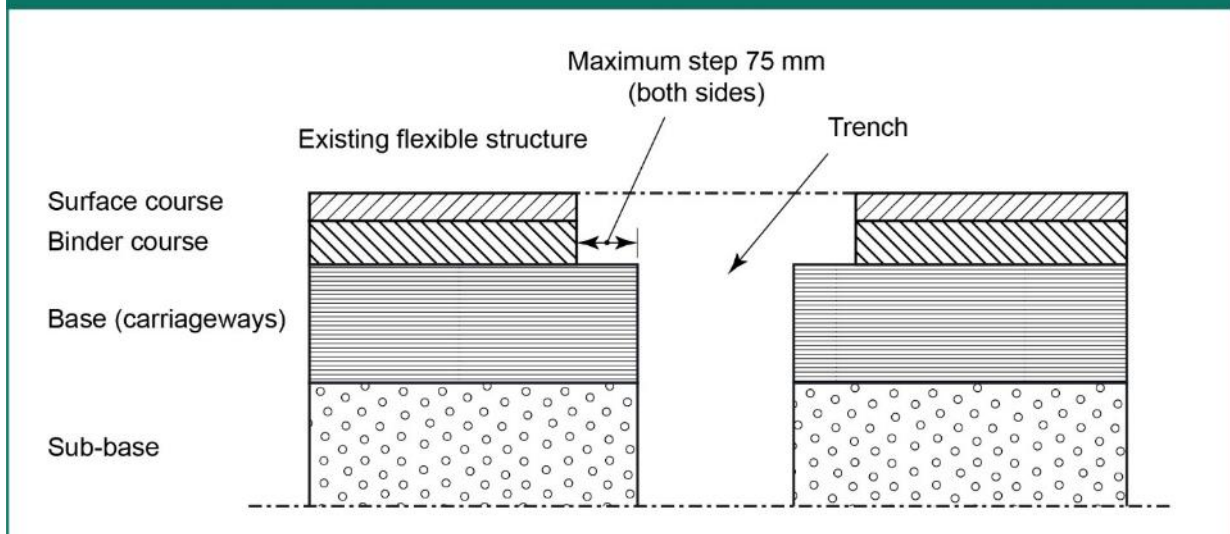


S6.8.11

Stepped joints

- 1) On Type 0 and 1 roads where it is the custom of the authority to cut-back the surface and/or binder course to provide a stepped profile, this must be notified to the undertaker. Subject to the agreement of the authority the stepped joint may be applied to reinstatements in Type 0 and 1 roads subject to the following:
 - a) Large diameter cores, small reinstatements and narrow transverse trenches are excluded
 - b) The stepped profile must match the authority's policy subject to a maximum step of 75 mm– see Figure S6.6.

Figure S6.6 Stepped joint in flexible and composite carriageway types 0 and 1



S6.9

Tolerances

S6.9.1

Tolerances for bituminous materials permitted in A2 for the reinstatement of flexible and composite roads must be in accordance with the requirements of A2.

S6.9.2

Tolerances for all other bituminous materials must be by agreement.

S7 Rigid and modular roads

S7.1 Reinstatement methods

General

- S7.1.1 When the total thickness of any bituminous overlay is 100 mm or more, it must be reinstated as a composite road in accordance with S6.
- S7.1.2 Some road constructions incorporating special design philosophies are outside the scope of this Code and reference should be made to NG 7.1.
- S7.1.3 The undertaker must carry out the reinstatement in accordance with one of the following methods and should endeavour to achieve the greatest degree of immediate permanent reinstatement. Reinstatement methods are listed in A2.12 Table A2.9.
- S7.1.4 Permitted materials and layer thickness are specified in A1, A2, A5, A9, A10 and A12.
- S7.1.5 Where the authority knows of any site with aggressive ground conditions it should advise undertakers in advance of the works so that appropriate measures may be taken.
- S7.1.6 Micro trenching is not permitted in rigid roads. Micro trenching may be used below modular surfaces after removal of the modules. In this case, S6.6 must be followed and the modules must be reinstated in accordance with S7.7.

Method A – All permanent reinstatement

- S7.1.7 The excavation and concrete road slab must be reinstated to a permanent standard at the first visit. The bituminous overlay must not be laid until the cured road slab has achieved a crushing strength of 25 N/mm².

Method B – Permanent binder course reinstatement

- S7.1.8 Not applicable

Method C – Permanent base reinstatement

- S7.1.9 Not applicable

Method D – Permanent sub-base reinstatement

- S7.1.10 The backfill and sub-base must be reinstated to a permanent standard at the first visit.
- S7.1.11 The concrete road slab and overlay (if existing) must be reinstated, for the interim period only, with a bound material. The interim surfacing must be a bound material to a thickness of 100 mm or 50 mm as shown in A5.1 to A5.3.

S7.1.12 On the second visit, all interim materials must be removed to the top of the sub-base and a permanent concrete road slab reinstated. The road slab must be in accordance with S7.3. Any overlay may be reinstated, to an interim standard, in accordance with the relevant requirements of S6.1.9 to S6.7.11.

S7.1.13 Any interim overlay must be removed at a later date, to the top of the concrete road slab, and a permanent overlay reinstated.

Method E – Permanent reinstatement incorporating interim surface overlay

S7.1.14 Any bituminous surface overlay may be reinstated, to an interim standard, in accordance with the relevant requirements of S6.1.9 to S6.7.11.

S7.1.15 Any interim bituminous overlay must be removed at a later date, to the top of the concrete road slab, and a permanent bituminous overlay reinstated.

Alternative reinstatement materials

S7.1.16 ARMs may be used on rigid roads in accordance with A9.

S7.2 Sub-base reinstatement

General

S7.2.1 In a rigid road, the sub-base is deemed to be any layer of imported granular or HBM immediately below the base of the concrete road slab. Where such a sub-base exists, a similar or equivalent material must be laid to match the existing thickness subject to a minimum thickness of 150 mm.

S7.2.2 Permitted options as shown in A5 are subject to the following exceptions:

Small reinstatements and narrow trenches

S7.2.3 A CBGM base may also be used as sub-base of 150 mm thickness in small excavations and narrow trenches regardless of whether the existing sub-base is cement bound.

S7.3 Concrete road slab reinstatement

General

S7.3.1 Permitted options, as shown in A5, are subject to the following conditions:

Concrete specification

S7.3.2 Concrete road slabs must be reinstated with C32/40 concrete mixed in accordance with SHW Clause 1001 and using an air entrainment admixture in the top 40 mm (at least) of the road slab. Exceptionally, where agreed, a concrete road slab may be reinstated with an alternative material to suit site conditions, e.g. a high early strength mix may be agreed to allow an earlier re-opening of a heavily trafficked road.

S7.3.3 Where concrete is mixed off site, Quality Assurance certificates detailing the specifications against which the concrete has been ordered and

supplied must be obtained by the undertaker for confirmation of material quality. Where possible, the concrete must be obtained from a plant that holds a Quality Assurance certificate.

S7.3.4 In the case of small excavations, a site-batched equivalent to C32/40 concrete may be used.

Considerations related to pavement details

S7.3.5 An inspection survey, commissioned by agreement, may be carried out to identify the slab type and its condition, joint spacing and the presence of any other features near the proposed excavation.

S7.3.6 The edge of an excavation must not be located within 600 mm of a kerb, ironwork, transverse or longitudinal joints or another reinstatement unless the trim-line and surface reinstatement can be extended up to the feature in question.

S7.3.7 On Type 0 and 1 roads where it is the custom of an authority to cut-back the concrete slab to provide a stepped profile, this must be notified to the undertaker. Subject to the agreement of the authority the stepped joint must be applied to reinstatements in Type 0 and 1 roads subject to the following:

- Large diameter cores, small reinstatements and narrow transverse trenches are excluded;
- The stepped profile must match the authority's policy subject to a maximum of 300 mm step.

S7.3.8 Concrete reinstatement must be dowelled/tied to the existing pavement. Dowel and tie bars must be used for all new joints. Dowel bars details are shown in S7.5.

S7.3.9 For narrow trenches and small excavations, the cut section of concrete will need to be widened to accommodate dowel/tie bar installation.

S7.3.10 Trenches with a length to width ratio greater than 3:2, and those built across multiple slabs, must be reinforced to mitigate early life non-structural cracking. The reinforcement must be placed in the upper part of the slab. If requested by the authority, reinstatements may need to include transverse joints.

S7.3.11 For continuously reinforced concrete slabs, the reinforcement within the excavation must be measured and recorded. The reinforcement in the reinstatement must replicate the original construction and allow for connecting the bars. Reliable methods of connecting the bars include tied splices, mechanical fastening and welded splices.

S7.3.12 Corner and edge cracking and joint damage within the trench area must be repaired as a part of the reinstatement works.

S7.3.13 *Joints*

All expansion, contraction and warping joints removed or damaged during excavation must be replaced or reconstructed to a similar design, using equivalent materials at the time of permanent reinstatement.

S7.3.14

Membranes

Any slip membrane must be reinstated beneath the road slab and a curing membrane must be used above the road slab.

Impermeable polythene or similar sheeting may be used for both the slip and curing membranes.

Sprayed plastic film can be used as a curing membrane by agreement.

Texture depth

S7.3.15

For small excavations, narrow trenches and other openings less than 1 m wide, reference must be made to S2.6.1(2) and Table S2.5.

S7.3.16

For all other excavations the authority must be consulted and a method agreed. The finished surface must comply with Table S2.5.

Opening to traffic

S7.3.17

The cured road slab may be opened to traffic as soon as a crushing strength of 25 N/mm² has been achieved.

S7.4

Large diameter cores

S7.4.1

Use of large diameter cores is permitted in rigid roads with the following exceptions:

- 1) Large diameter cores cannot be taken within 600 mm of concrete slab corners and/or edges. This is to protect the integrity of the concrete pavement.
- 2) The technique may be used as an excavation method in continuously reinforce concrete roads; however, trimming will be required for reinforcement in accordance with S7.6. This also means that reinstatement in accordance with S6.7.17 is not permitted.

S7.4.2

Where the technique is appropriate, it must be carried out in accordance with S6.7. To match the adjoining carriageway, between 100 mm to 150 mm of the sub-base may be removed.

S7.5

Edge support and preparation

S7.5.1

The edges of all excavations in rigid roads must comply with the following requirements:

Edge support

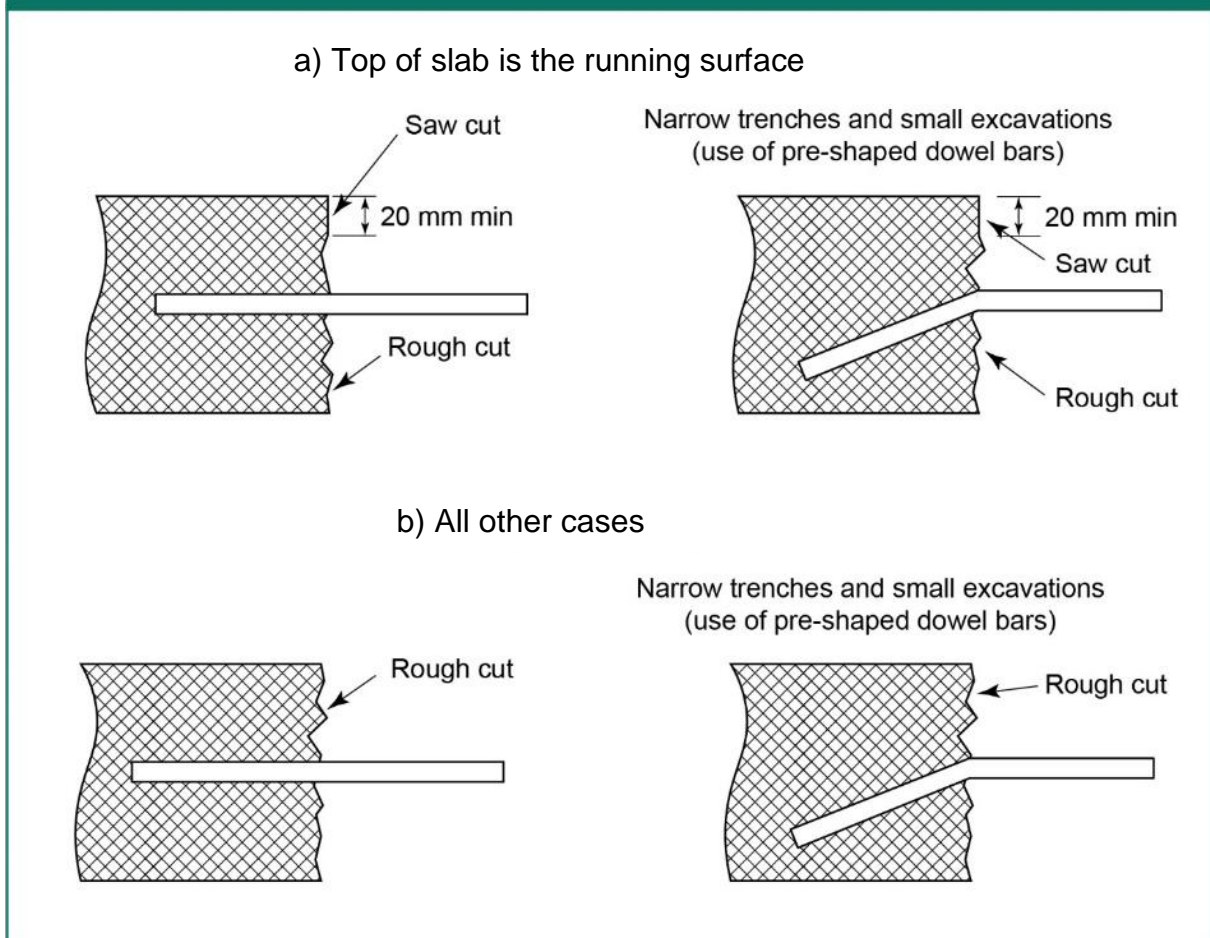
S7.5.2

Where the top of the slab is the running surface, the excavation must be delineated by pavement sawing to a minimum depth of 20 mm. Any unsawn section of the slab may be left rough-cut as long as it presents an approximately vertical surface - see Figure S7.1a. For overlaid slabs, the edges should be prepared as detailed in Figure S7.1b.

S7.5.3

In narrow trenches and small excavations (S1.5.3 and S1.5.5) the holes may be drilled at an angle to allow the use of pre-shaped (angled) dowel bars. They must be drilled along the centreline of the exposed faces, to provide a sliding fit for 20 mm or 25 mm diameter steel dowel bars.

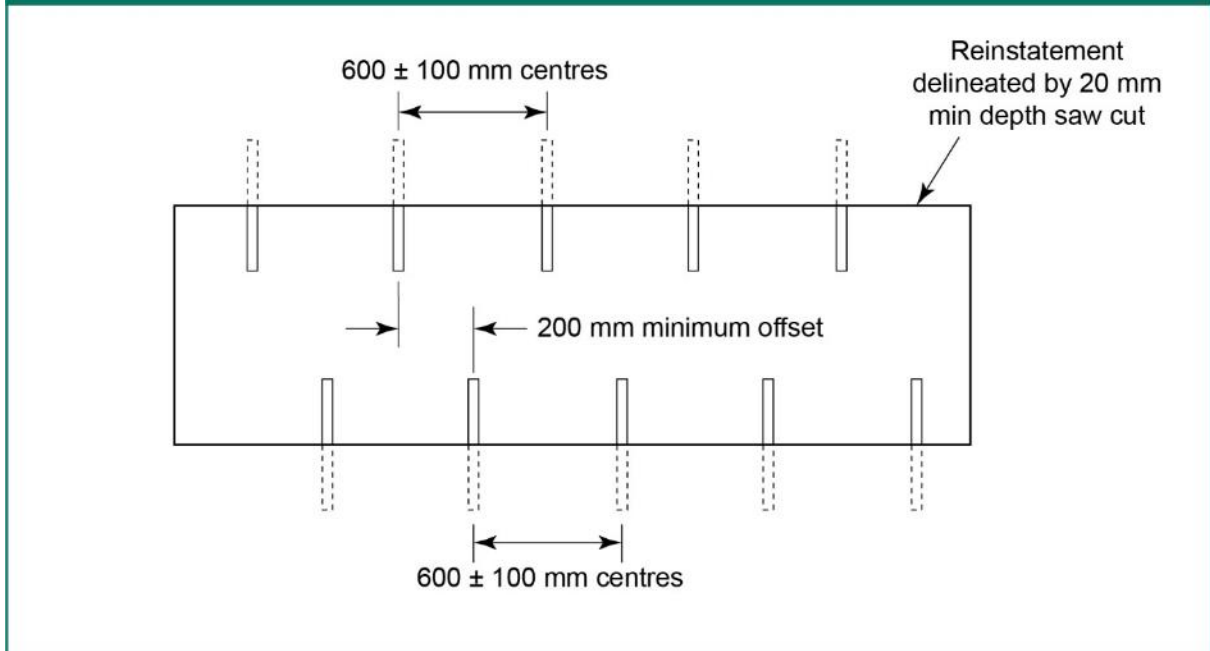
Figure S7.1 Edge options



S7.5.4 In deep openings and other openings (S1.5.6 and S1.5.7 respectively), a row of horizontal holes must be drilled along the centreline of the exposed faces to provide a sliding fit for 20 mm or 25 mm diameter steel dowel bars as shown in Figure S7.2.

S7.5.5 The holes must be drilled at $600 \text{ mm} \pm 100 \text{ mm}$ centres, with the holes along one face offset, relative to the opposite face by at least 200 mm when viewed from above; see Figure S7.2. The nominal hole depth must be equal to 50% of the dowel bar length $\pm 50 \text{ mm}$.

Figure S7.2 Dowel bar arrangement - plan view



S7.5.6 The maximum dowel bar length is 400 mm; minimum dowel bar length is equal to the width of the reinstatement less 50 mm. The first step in installing dowel bars is to place grout (cementitious or epoxy) into the back of each hole. The end of the bar that extends into the utility cut area should have a bond breaker applied to it to prevent bonding with the patch material. This bond breaker may be applied by the manufacturer or may be field-applied. Dowel bars must be clean, free of flaking rust, and epoxy-coated (or have equivalent anti-corrosion treatment) before installation.

S7.5.7 Dowels may be omitted with the agreement of the authority.

Edge preparation

- S7.5.8 Where necessary, the edges of the reinstatement must be trimmed over part or all of slab depth to comply with the following requirements:
- 1) The edge regularity must comply with the requirements of S6.8.6.
 - 2) Any undercutting must comply with the requirements of S6.8.10.
 - 3) Where the adjacent road slab has cracked as a result of the excavation operation, the damaged area of the slab must be removed and included within the area to be reinstated.
 - 4) Where, after trimming, the excavation extends to within 300 mm of a slab edge, a joint, ironwork or another reinstatement, the relevant area of the slab must be removed and included within the area to be reinstated.
 - 5) All edges must be cleaned and wetted before placing concrete.

S7.6 Reinforcement

S7.6.1 Where steel reinforcement in the concrete slab has been cut, new steel of equivalent weight must be provided in accordance with the following requirements:

- 1) The new reinforcement must be lapped and wired or welded to the existing reinforcement.
- 2) A minimum of 150 mm of the existing reinforcement must be exposed to allow adequate attachment of the new reinforcement.
- 3) Where 150 mm of the exposed reinforcement cannot be preserved during the excavation, the concrete road slab must be trimmed as necessary to expose additional reinforcement. This additional trimming does not supersede the requirement to provide dowel bars.

S7.7 Overlays

General

S7.7.1 Where the surface of the concrete road slab or the modular surface layer is overlaid with a bituminous material or surface treatment, a matching thickness of a similar or equivalent material must be laid.

S7.7.2 Wherever practicable, the required surface course thickness should be maintained by adjustment of the binder course thickness. The surface course and binder course materials must not be laid to a thickness less than that required by A2 and A3 for the nominal size of each material laid.

S7.7.3 Where the surface of the concrete road slab or modular surface has had a surface treatment including overlay, an equivalent surface treatment or overlay must be applied.

Surface reinstatement

S7.7.4 Permitted options are shown in A4 and A5, subject to the following exceptions:

- 1) Edge preparation must be carried out in accordance with S6.8, except that the existing edge of the overlay must be trimmed to a distance equal to the nominal thickness of the surface course or 40 mm, whichever is the greater.
- 2) Surface reinstatement must be carried out in accordance with the requirements of S6.4 or S6.5, whichever is applicable.

S7.8 Modular roads

S7.8.1 Types 0, 1 and 2 modular roads are not included in this Code and reinstatement designs must be in accordance with BS 7533: Part 3, BS 6717: Part 1 & BS 6667: Part 1.

S7.8.2 The undertaker must carry out the reinstatement of Types 3 and 4 modular roads in accordance with one of the following methods and should endeavour to achieve greatest degree of immediate permanent reinstatement.

S7.8.3 Permitted materials and layer thickness are specified in A1, A2, A6, A9, A10 and A12, subject to the following requirements.

S7.8.4 Where modules of natural stone material are present in trafficked roads, refer to A12.

Method A – All permanent reinstatement

S7.8.5 The backfill, sub-base (if present), bedding and modular surface layer must be reinstated to a permanent standard at the first visit.

Method B – Permanent sub-base reinstatement

S7.8.6 The backfill and sub-base must be reinstated to a permanent standard at the first visit, together with an interim granular base and interim bituminous surface course, as per S6.1.12 to S6.1.14.

S7.8.7 On the second visit, the interim reinstatement must be removed to the top of the sub-base and a permanent base, bedding and modular surface layer reinstated.

Sub-base reinstatement

S7.8.8 Permitted options are shown in A6, subject to the requirements of S6.2.

S7.8.9 The sub-base must be reinstated to match the existing materials and thicknesses, or its structural equivalent.

Base reinstatement

S7.8.10 Permitted options are shown in A6, subject to the requirements of S6.3.

S7.8.11 The base must be reinstated to match the existing materials and thicknesses, or its structural equivalent.

Surface reinstatement

S7.8.12 The modular surface layer must be reinstated in accordance with A6 and A12. The requirements and recommendations for replacement modules are given in A12.

Alternative reinstatement materials

S7.8.13 ARMs may be used in modular roads in accordance with A9.

S7.9 **Tolerances**

S7.9.1 All performance requirements and tolerances permitted in the reinstatement of rigid and modular roads must be in accordance with the requirements of S2 and A2.

S8 Footways, footpaths and cycle tracks

s8.1 Reinstatement methods

General

- S8.1.1 The undertaker must carry out reinstatement in accordance with one of the following methods and should endeavour to achieve the greatest degree of immediate permanent reinstatement. Reinstatement methods are listed in A2.12 Table A2.9.
- S8.1.2 In the event of prior notification by the authority, where local custom is to surface footways, footpaths and cycle tracks with aggregates of a certain colour and/or minimum PSV, then the undertaker must provide equivalent aggregate at the time of permanent reinstatement, subject to the requirements of S2.6.1.
- S8.1.3 Permitted materials and layer thickness are specified in A1, A2, A7, A9, A10 and A12. In all flexible reinstatements, the surface course material may also be used at binder course level, as shown in A7.1.
- S8.1.4 Cycle tracks that are part of the carriageway must be reinstated to carriageway standards.
- S8.1.5 S6.5 must be followed for small excavations and narrow trenches. For micro trenching, large diameter cores and work around ironwork, S6.6, S6.7 and S11.5 must be followed, respectively.

Method A – All permanent reinstatement

- S8.1.6 The excavation must be reinstated to a permanent standard at the first visit.

Method B – Permanent binder course reinstatement

- S8.1.7 In flexible structures, the backfill, sub-base and binder course must be reinstated to permanent standard at the first visit.
- S8.1.8 The permanent binder course material, or an alternative interim material, must be extended to the running surface with or without a thin separating medium at the binder course/surface course interface. The alternative interim material may be a bituminous mixture.
- S8.1.9 On the second visit, all interim surfacing materials must be removed to the top of the binder course and an appropriate permanent surface course laid.

S8.1.10 Where a sand separation layer is present, before reinstating the permanent surface course, the sand must be removed, the surface brushed clean and a bond coat applied.

Method C – Permanent base reinstatement

Not applicable

Method D – Permanent sub-base reinstatement

S8.1.11 The backfill and sub-base must be reinstated to a permanent standard at the first visit with an interim surfacing.

S8.1.12 For flexible or rigid structures, the interim surface course and some or all of the interim binder course may be a bituminous mixture. The lower portion of the interim binder course may be an unbound granular material.

S8.1.13 For modular structures, the interim surfacing may be a bituminous mixture, paving modules or any combination thereof.

S8.1.14 On the second visit, all interim surfacing materials must be removed to the top of the sub-base and an appropriate permanent surfacing must be laid.

Method E – Permanent reinstatement incorporating interim surface overlay

Not applicable

Alternative reinstatement materials

S8.1.15 ARMs may be used in flexible and composite footways, foot paths and cycle tracks in accordance with A9.

S8.2 **Sub-base reinstatement**

General

S8.2.1 Flexible and composite footways, foot paths and cycle tracks must be reinstated with the permitted options shown in A7.1 and A7.2 respectively, subject to the exceptions described in S8.2.3, S8.2.4, S8.2.5 and S8.2.6.

S8.2.2 Rigid footways, foot paths and cycle tracks must be reinstated with the permitted options shown in A7.3, subject to the exceptions described in S8.2.3, S8.2.4, S8.2.5 and S8.2.6.

Small openings and narrow trenches

S8.2.3 In small openings and narrow trenches, the following options are permitted regardless of whether the existing sub-base is a bound material:

- 1) A HBM sub-base of 100 mm minimum thickness; or
- 2) A 50/20 HRABC or 20 mm DBC material of 40 mm thickness, laid in place of the granular sub-base; or
- 3) Three equal layers of 15/10 HRASC, 6 mm DSC or 6 mm SMA material laid to a total thickness of 100 mm, as a combined sub-base, binder course and surface course.

Alternative reinstatement materials (ARMs)

- S8.2.4 Alternative reinstatement materials may be laid at sub-base level in accordance with A9.

Reinstatements adjacent to roads

- S8.2.5 Where road construction layers, foundation platforms, structural courses, kerb beams and/or backing providing the edge support to the road structure are found to extend below an adjacent footway, footpath, cycle track or verge, any reinstatement therein must take account of such provisions.
- S8.2.6 In such cases, the sub-structure of the footway, footpath, cycle track or verge must be reinstated to match the existing layer thickness with similar or equivalent materials.

S8.3 Surface reinstatement

General

- S8.3.1 Surface reinstatement options for flexible, composite and rigid footways, foot paths and cycle tracks are shown in A7, subject to the following exceptions:

High duty and high amenity areas

- S8.3.2 The authority must register all high duty/amenity footways, footpaths or cycle tracks and identify a source of reinstatement materials.
- S8.3.3 The undertaker should reinstate all registered high duty/amenity footways, footpaths or cycle tracks with matching materials from the identified source.
- S8.3.4 If the proposed material/product is not appropriate, the authority must work with the undertaker to locate an alternative source.
- S8.3.5 If the material is not identified by the authority, the undertaker should use best endeavours to match the existing surfacing material.
- S8.3.6 Where aggregates of a distinctive colour are encountered and the local custom has been to complete all previous surfacing in a similarly matching material, the reinstatement must be in accordance with S6.4.14.

Areas surfaced with bituminous materials

- S8.3.7 Footways, footpaths or cycle tracks surfaced with bituminous materials must be reinstated with approved materials (including HRA, SMA and AC) as specified in A2.
- S8.3.8 Where the authority has a policy of using a specific type of asphalt surfacing on footways (i.e. the material specification is not wholly contained within the options given in A2), unless otherwise agreed with the authority, the undertaker must take all reasonable measures to reinstate excavations with that material.
- S8.3.9 The authority, when requested, must provide any details they have on suitable suppliers and specifications. Where no practicable source of

supply can be found, the reinstatement must be carried out in accordance with S8.3.7.

Areas constructed in concrete

- S8.3.10 Concrete footways, footpaths or cycle tracks must be reinstated with C25/30 minimum strength concrete, as per S7.3.2 to S7.3.4, to match the existing thickness. For small excavations, site-batched concrete of equivalent strength may be used.
- S8.3.11 Where the authority knows of any site where air-entrained concrete has been used, it should advise undertakers in advance of the works.
- S8.3.12 Where the existing concrete has been air entrained, air-entrained concrete to SHW Clause 1001 must be used. Air-entrained concrete may be used elsewhere at the discretion of the undertaker.

Modular footways, footpaths and cycle tracks

- S8.3.13 Modular footways, footpaths and cycle tracks must be reinstated in accordance with the permitted materials and layer thickness specified in A7.3.
- S8.3.14 The modular surface layer must be reinstated in accordance with A12. The requirements and recommendations for the provision of replacement modules are shown in A12.
- S8.3.15 For the reinstatement of natural stone modular surfaces, the following applies:
 - 1) Natural stone modules within the area to be excavated must be removed and stored by the undertaker for re-use.
 - 2) Modules must be reinstated in accordance with A12.
 - 3) Where the authority has a policy that seeks to re-use existing modules that are damaged, the parts or fragments must be removed and stored by the undertaker for re-use. The undertaker must notify the authority and the method of reinstatement for these materials must be agreed, including any limitation on the size of the fragments.
 - 4) Where it has been agreed that damaged modules are to be re-used as part of the permanent reinstatement, the surface profile at the end of the guarantee period is not required to be superior to that existing at the time of excavation.
 - 5) The undertaker must use best endeavours to match existing profiles and meet the tolerances specified in S2, subject to the limitations outlined in A12.

Special materials

- S8.3.16 Other specialist surfacing materials must be reinstated in accordance with S6.4.15.
- S8.3.17 In high duty footways, footpaths and cycle tracks where local custom has been to complete previous surface restoration of excavations with overbanding or other coating of a certain minimum skid resistance value, the undertaker must provide a similar minimum skid resistance value for the material used to overband reinstatement edges.

S8.4 Micro trenching

- S8.4.1 Micro trenching is permitted in flexible and composite footways, footpaths and cycle tracks as per S6.6. It is not permitted in rigid and modular surfaces. However, micro trenching may be used below modular surfacing after removal of the modules. In this case, S6.6 must be followed and the modules must be reinstated in accordance with S7.7.

S8.5 Large diameter cores

- S8.5.1 Large diameter coring is permitted in footways, footpath and cycles tracks. This must be in accordance with S6.7 except that in footways, footpaths and cycle tracks, the minimum bound layer/slab depth is 60 mm (not 100 mm as per S6.7).

S8.6 Edge requirements

- S8.6.1 For all footways, footpaths and cycle tracks, the edge regularity and any undercutting must comply with the requirements of S6.8.6 and S6.8.10, respectively.
- S8.6.2 For all flexible footways, footpaths and cycle tracks, the edge sealing must comply with the requirements of S6.8.7 and any overbanding must comply with the requirements of S6.8.8.
- S8.6.3 For all concrete footways, footpaths and cycle tracks, the treatment of any cracking must comply with the requirements of S7.5.9 (3).
- S8.6.4 For all footways, footpaths and cycle tracks, where trim-lines for the reinstatement edges are within 150 mm of an edge, kerb, ironwork or other reinstatements, the trim-lines must be extended to the interface of the edge, kerb etc. This additional reinstatement may be confined to the surface course provided lower courses have not been damaged. See Figure S8.1.
- S8.6.5 Fixed features in the footway such as sign posts, lamp columns, stop-cock valve boxes, etc. that are less than 250 mm diameter or 250 mm wide on the side facing the reinstatement are exempt from the trim-line extension.

S8.7 Vehicular trafficking

Commercial access

S8.7.1 Where a recognised route for commercial vehicles crosses a footway, footpath or cycle track, the relevant area of the crossing is deemed to be a Type 4 road.

S8.7.2 Reinstatement of the crossing area must comply with the relevant requirements of S6 or S7, as appropriate.

S8.7.3 Where a special construction has been incorporated in the original design to cater for expected traffic greater than the Type 4 limiting capacity, the undertaker should consult the authority.

Domestic access

S8.7.4 Where a recognised domestic vehicle route or occasional emergency service vehicle access route crosses a footway, footpath or cycle track, the existing structure may include thicker layers, higher quality materials or other strengthening measures.

S8.7.5 Reinstatement of the crossing area must match the existing layer thickness, with similar or equivalent materials.

Other trafficking

S8.7.6 Where a footway, footpath, cycle track or specified pedestrian area is subjected to regular vehicle overrunning or parking, the existing structure may include thicker layers, higher quality materials or other strengthening measures.

S8.7.7 Reinstatement of such areas must match the existing layer thickness, with similar or equivalent materials.

S8.8 Tolerances

S8.8.1 Performance requirements and tolerances permitted in the reinstatement of footways, footpaths and cycle tracks must be in accordance with the requirements of S2 and A2.

S9 Verges and unmade ground

S9.1 General

S9.1.1 Backfill materials must comply with the requirements of S5.

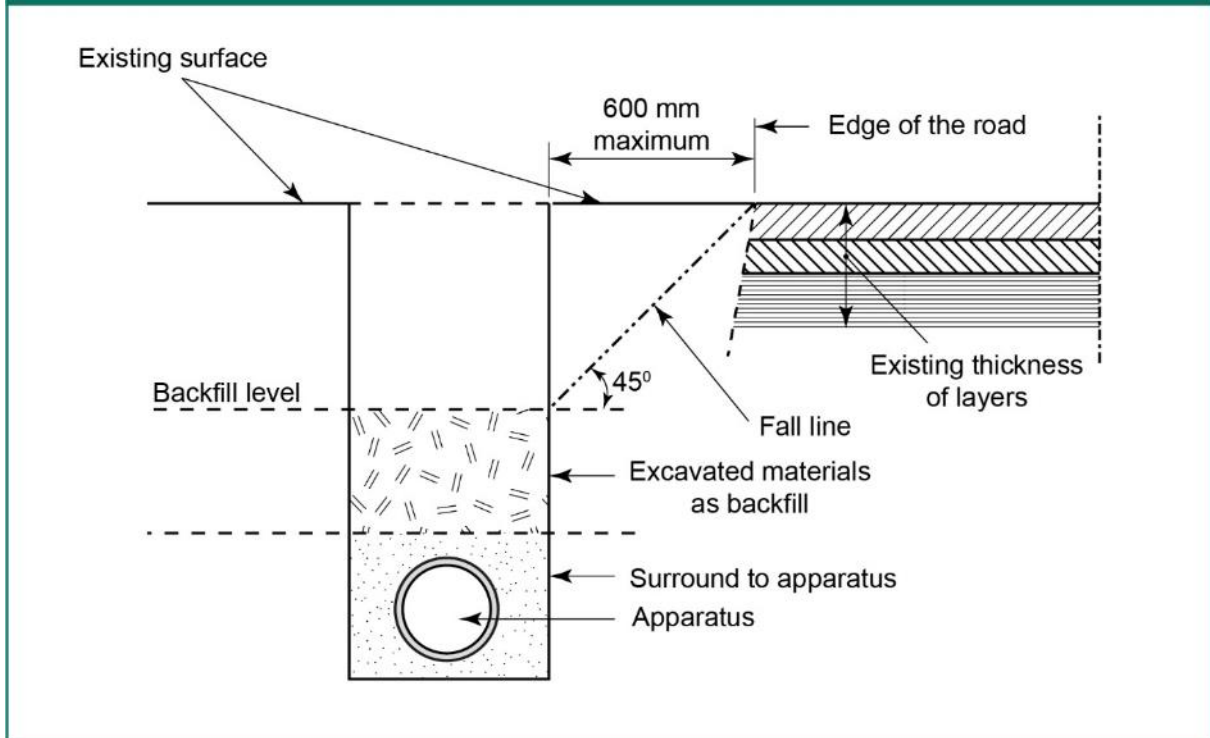
- 1) Topsoil within 200 mm of the surface of the verge must be stored and re-used. Where insufficient topsoil is available from the excavation, imported topsoil may be used to a depth of 100 mm or to match the existing depth, whichever is the lesser.
- 2) Care must be taken to ensure that imported topsoil is not contaminated with non-organic material or noxious weeds.
- 3) The re-use of excavated materials as backfill in verges and unmade ground is to be encouraged as part of a policy of environmentally sustainable construction.
- 4) Where invasive plant species are identified within the excavated materials, these materials must not be re-used in the reinstatement. Appropriate advice may be sought from the authority or DEFRA as to the means of permissible disposal.

S9.2 Adjacent road structures

S9.2.1 Where road construction layers (including any structural courses, foundations, kerbs and/or backing that provide edge support to road structures) extend below adjacent verges or unmade ground, any reinstatement therein must take account of such provisions. The reinstatement of such areas must match the existing layer thicknesses, with similar or equivalent materials.

S9.2.2 Where there is no such edge support within adjacent verges or unmade ground, any part of a reinstatement that comes within 600 mm of the edge of a road must include sub-base materials at backfill level up to a level where a 45° fall line extending downwards from the road surface intersects the side of the trench nearest the road, as shown in Figure S9.1.

Figure S9.1 Verge reinstatement adjacent to edge of road



S9.3 Cultivated areas

S9.3.1 Unless otherwise agreed, cultivated areas containing shrubs, plants or bulbs must be reinstated using the same or similar species. Where the authority knows of special features in verges (e.g. orchid sites etc.) it should inform the undertaker to agree the best means of conserving those features.

S9.4 Grassed areas

S9.4.1 Grassed areas must be reinstated using the original turf, replacement turf or an equivalent seed, depending on weather and growing season.

S9.4.2 Where grassed areas have been mown, the reinstated surface must be demonstrably free from stones greater than 20 mm nominal size. All other debris arising from the works must be removed from the site. It should be recognised that stones in grassed areas tend to migrate to the surface over a period of time and this should not lead to repeated intervention.

S9.5 Verges, ditches and drainage courses

S9.5.1 Verges, ditches and drainage courses must be restored to their original profile, unless otherwise agreed. The function of any grips must not be compromised as a result of the works.

S10 Compaction requirements

S10.1 Introduction

- S10.1.1 All compaction equipment covered by this Code must be checked, adjusted, maintained and operated in accordance with working practices, maintenance schedules, operating procedures and vibrating frequencies recommended by the equipment manufacturer. Where available, relevant records must be provided to the authority on request within a reasonable period of time.
- S10.1.2 If available, records can demonstrate to the authority that the undertaker is using calibrated equipment. If data is not available, the authority may monitor more closely to check on compaction.
- S10.1.3 All equipment and operating procedures used for compacting reinstatement materials laid above the surround to apparatus must comply with the following requirements:

S10.2 Compaction of materials

- S10.2.1 For all materials, compaction must be carried out in accordance with the requirements of A2 and/or A8, immediately after the material has been placed.

Unbound granular and cohesive materials

- S10.2.2 All Class A Graded Granular Materials, Class B Granular Materials and Class C Cohesive/Granular Materials must be compacted in accordance with the relevant requirements of A8, Table A8.1.
- S10.2.3 All Class D Cohesive Materials must be compacted in accordance with the relevant requirements and restrictions of A8, Table A8.1.
- S10.2.4 Where access is restricted, including small excavations and trenches less than 200 mm wide, compaction must be in accordance with the restricted access provisions of A8, Table A8.1.

Alternative reinstatement materials (ARMs)

- S10.2.5 Certain structural materials for reinstatements (SMRs) and treated materials for fill (TMFs) may not require the full compaction specified in A8, Table A8.1 and may be damaged if over-compacted. Such materials should be placed and compacted in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations with due regard to the requirements of A9.
- S10.2.6 FCRs must not be compacted or tamped unless specifically required by the manufacturer. Thereafter, such FCR materials must be placed and

compacted in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations with due regard to the requirements of A2.5.2.

Bituminous materials

S10.2.7 All bituminous materials permitted by A2, except those covered in A2.5, must be laid and compacted in accordance with the relevant requirements of A2, Tables A2.5, A2.7 and A2.8, and A8.3.

S10.2.8 The in-situ air voids content for all bituminous materials as permitted in A2 must comply with the requirements shown in Table S10.1. The in-situ air voids content must be calculated as the average from all results obtained.

- The maximum density must be determined in accordance with BS EN 12697 – 5 Procedure A, in water.
- The bulk density must be determined in accordance with BS EN 12697 – 6 Procedure C sealed specimen.
 - If two or more cores are retrieved from a reinstatement, wax sealing is the preferred method.
 - In only one core is retrieved from a reinstatement, alternative sealing methods permitted in BS EN 12697-6 Procedure C such as using self-adhesive aluminium foil or vacuumed plastic wrap may be used.
- The maximum density and core bulk density must be used to determine air void content in accordance with BS EN 12697-8.

Table S10.1 In-situ air voids content requirements

Bituminous materials	Permitted air voids			
	Carriageways		Footpaths	
	Max %	Min %	Max %	Min %
AC 6 dense surface course	NP	NP	13	2
AC 10 close surface course	11	2	11*	2*
HRA surface course	7	2	10	2
SMA surface course	8	2	10	2
AC binder course	10	2	12	2
HRA binder course	9	2	12	2
SMA binder course	6	2	NP	NP
Permanent cold-lay surfacing materials (PCSM)	10	2	13	2
Any other bituminous materials within the specification	No air-voids limits apply. Guidance on compaction contained in NG A8.3			
Note to Table S10.1 – NP = not permitted				

- S10.2.9 All surface course materials used at binder course level must comply with the in-situ air voids content requirement for the relevant surface course material.
- S10.2.10 To determine the in-situ air void content core samples must be taken at a rate of 1 per 6 m² or part thereof. The average void content must be calculated for each reinstatement covered by a single notice. All core samples must be 100 mm minimum diameter with no part of any core being within 100 mm of any surface apparatus within the reinstatement. Where there is a potential to encounter the edge of the frame or apparatus, this distance should be increased accordingly.
- S10.2.11 Unless agreed otherwise, all air voids testing must be carried out by a laboratory holding current UKAS accreditation for the specified test methods.
- S10.2.12 Where core samples are recovered from a location overlaying an unbound substrate, trimming the bottom of a core sample is only permitted where it exceeds the specified length. Trimming the upper part of a core sample is not permitted. In any case, the length of core samples subjected to testing must comply with this Code.
- S10.2.13 Where prevailing weather conditions or other site circumstances are considered likely to hamper the successful laying and compaction of any surfacing materials and the achievement of the required in-situ air voids content, consideration should be given to deferring the permanent surface reinstatement and, if necessary, to an agreed extension of the interim reinstatement period.

Hydraulically bound materials, CBGM and concrete

- S10.2.14 Pavement quality concrete, laid as the surface slab of road, footway, footpath or cycle track reinstatements, must be compacted using a proprietary vibrator, selected and operated in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. However, proprietary vibrators may be unsuitable for concrete sections less than 100 mm wide or less than 0.5 m² in area. In such cases, as a minimum requirement, all concrete must be thoroughly tamped by hand.
- S10.2.15 CBGM base must be compacted in accordance with the relevant requirements of A8, Table A8.1.
- S10.2.16 Where the HBM is not CBGM base, it must be compacted in accordance with the requirements of A10.2.

Modular surfacing materials

- S10.2.17 Compaction equipment must be operated in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

S10.3 Equipment operation and restrictions

- S10.3.1 All compaction equipment must be used in accordance with the requirements of A8.
- S10.3.2 Additional guidance on compaction procedures is included in NG10.3.
- S10.3.3 Alternative technologies (ATs) may be used in accordance with A9.

Hand rammers

- S10.3.4 Except as permitted in S2.2.3, S6.5.1, S6.5.2, S10.2.5, S10.2.6 and S10.2.14, hand rammers can only be used to assist the initial placement of material.
- S10.3.5 For all materials, full compaction must be applied, in accordance with the relevant requirements of A8.

Percussive rammers

- S10.3.6 Percussive rammers are permitted for compacting reinstatement materials in accordance with the following requirements:
- 1) The nominal mass must not be less than 10 kg.
 - 2) The width of the foot must not exceed 200 mm.
 - 3) The contact length of the foot must not exceed 200 mm.

Vibrotampers

- S10.3.7 Vibrotampers are permitted for compacting reinstatement materials in accordance with the following requirements:
- S10.3.8 *50 kg minimum nominal mass*
- 1) The width of the foot must not exceed 5 mm/kg of the nominal mass.
 - 2) The contact length of the foot must not exceed 350 mm nor be less than 175 mm.
 - 3) The foot contact area must not exceed 1000 mm²/kg of the nominal mass.
 - 4) The mass of any extension leg must not exceed 10% of the nominal mass.
- S10.3.9 *25 to 50 kg nominal mass – permitted in areas of restricted access only*
- 1) The width of the foot must not exceed 150 mm.
 - 2) The contact length of the foot must not exceed 200 mm.

Vibrating rollers

- S10.3.10 Vibrating rollers are permitted for compacting reinstatement materials in accordance with the following requirements:
- S10.3.11 *Single-drum vibrating rollers*
- 1) Single drum vibrating rollers must include a mechanical means of applying vibration to the roll. Single-drum rollers without a specific vibration unit must be considered to be single-drum deadweight rollers and are not permitted for reinstatement purposes.
 - 2) The minimum permitted mass of a single-drum vibrating roller is 600 kg/m width.

S10.3.12 *Twin-drum vibrating rollers*

- 1) Twin-drum vibrating rollers must include two vibrating rolls. Twin-drum rollers in which only one roll vibrates are considered to be single-drum vibrating rollers.
- 2) The minimum permitted mass of a twin-drum vibrating roller is 600 kg/m width.

S10.3.13 *All vibrating rollers*

- 1) The mass per metre width of a vibrating roller must be calculated by dividing the total mass supported by the roll(s) by the total width of the roll(s).
- 2) A minimum mass of 600 kg/m width is required for vibrating rollers for compacting bituminous material. Where existing roads, footways, footpaths or cycle tracks could be marked or otherwise damaged by the use of 600 to 1000 kg/m vibrating rollers, the authority must notify the undertaker accordingly, whereupon the use of lower weight vibrating rollers must be agreed.

Vibrating plate compactors

S10.3.14 Vibrating plate compactors of 1400 kg/m² minimum mass are permitted for compacting reinstatement materials.

Other compaction equipment

S10.3.15 Other compaction equipment, including machine-mounted compactors and all other compaction devices not specifically referenced within A8, may be permitted for compacting reinstatement materials, subject to the requirements of NG10.

S11 Ancillary activities

S11.1 Traffic signs, road markings, studs and verge markers

General

- S11.1.1 Before opening any works to traffic, all traffic signs, road markings, studs and verge markers removed during the works must be reinstated to a permanent or temporary standard. Temporary traffic signs, road markings, studs and verge markers are permitted for a maximum of 15 working days following completion of the permanent reinstatement.
- S11.1.2 All traffic signs, road markings, studs and verge markers removed during works must be reinstated at their original locations wherever possible. Where this is not possible, they must be permanently reinstated to a new layout in accordance with the Traffic Signs Manual: Chapter 5 and the Traffic Signs Regulations & General Directions.
- S11.1.3 Where the layout of existing traffic signs, road markings, studs or verge markers is not in accordance with the Traffic Signs Manual: Chapter 5 and the Traffic Signs Regulations & General Directions, and the authority notifies the undertaker before starting the works, the layout of all traffic signs, road markings, studs or verge markers to be reinstated following the works must be determined by agreement. In this event, if the authority provides any new traffic signs, studs or verge markers, to replace obsolete or previously damaged items removed during the works, then the undertaker must install such items as part of the permanent reinstatement of the works.

Traffic signs, studs and verge markers

- S11.1.4 Wherever possible, all traffic signs, studs and verge markers removed during the works must be re-erected or re-installed on completion. Where the original items cannot be re-erected or re-installed, they must be replaced using items of equivalent type, colour, performance and dimensions.

Road markings – General

- S11.1.5 Prior to permanent reinstatement, temporary road markings may be made using quick drying, durable paint, adhesive strip or like materials of similar colour and dimensions to the original markings.
- S11.1.6 Road markings removed during the works must be permanently reinstated using materials of equivalent colour and dimensions.

S11.1.7 Except where otherwise specified by the authority, the retro-reflectivity and skid resistance of all yellow and white lines must comply with BS EN 1436, as follows:

- 1) Dry retro-reflectivity to Table 3:
 - Yellow – Class R0
 - White – Class R2
- 2) Wet skid resistance to Table 7:
 - Yellow – Class S1
 - White – Class S3

S11.1.8 Unless otherwise agreed by the authority, all white thermoplastic road markings must be treated with surface-applied glass beads to achieve the performance requirements in 3) a) & b) above.

S11.1.9 Hot-applied thermoplastic road marking materials with synthetic resin binder must be laid to the following thickness:

- 1) Screed lines – 3.5 mm ± 1.5 mm
- 2) Sprayed yellow edge lines (No Waiting, etc.) – 0.8 mm minimum
- 3) Sprayed lines, other than yellow – 1.5 mm minimum
- 4) Extruded lines – 3.0 mm ± 0.5 mm

S11.1.10 Cold applied road markings (e.g. methyl methacrylate) may be used as an alternative to hot-applied thermoplastic materials provided that they at least match the appropriate BS EN 1824 durability and BS EN 1436 performance requirements as set out in this section.

S11.1.11 The performance requirements for permanent road marking materials must have been established from road trials in accordance with BS EN 1824. The material used to reinstate road markings must be in accordance with Table S11.1.

Table S11.1 Performance requirements for road markings

Road type	Required toll-over class (BS EN 1824:2011 Table 3)
0	P5
1 to 4 & footways/footpaths/cycle tracks	P4

Road markings – Small reinstatements

S11.1.12 Road markings for small excavations (as defined in S1.5.5) must meet the criteria in S11.1.5 to S11.1.11. Alternative materials may be used, subject to the following:

- 1) Road marking tape may be used in place of thermoplastic markings or marking paint – individual tape lengths must be no more than 2.5 m.
- 2) Pre-formed thermoplastic markings may be used in place of hot applied thermoplastic materials – individual lengths must be no more than 2.5 m.

- 3) No alternatives may be used in place of specialist materials such as rib markings without the prior approval of the authority.

S11.2 Street furniture and special features

- S11.2.1 Street furniture and other special features, such as tactile paving removed to facilitate street works, must be replaced in the same position and layout before opening the highway to traffic and pedestrians. Items removed to facilitate street works must be carefully stored and maintained during the works. Advice on replacement may be provided by the authority.

S11.3 Traffic sensors, etc.

- S11.3.1 Where excavation is planned at or near to traffic sensors etc, advice regarding precautions to avoid damage must be sought from the relevant authority before work commences.

S11.4 Water-related matters

Sewers, drains and tunnels

- S11.4.1 An undertaker executing street works that involve breaking up or opening a sewer, drain or tunnel that is vested in or owned by another responsible authority must obtain the approval of that authority before executing the works to the reasonable requirements and satisfaction of that authority.
- S11.4.2 In the case of a public sewer, “responsible authority” means the sewerage undertaker (i.e. the water service company for the relevant area).
- S11.4.3 In the case of any other sewer, drain or tunnel, the “responsible authority” means the owner (or the authority, body or person) responsible for the management or control of the sewer, drain or tunnel.
- S11.4.4 Where the responsible authority knows of the existence of sustainable drainage systems (SuDS) in areas likely to be affected by the undertaker’s work, they must inform the undertaker, so that an appropriate excavation and reinstatement methods can be agreed.

Water egress (reinstatements)

- S11.4.5 If water issues from a reinstatement, the street authority must initiate an investigatory works procedure to determine the cause of the water egress. Before starting the investigatory work, the authority should contact any undertakers it believes may be responsible for the water egress. Undertakers must cooperate with the authority in its investigation and may take trial holes.
- S11.4.6 If following the investigation, the authority has reasonable cause to believe that water egress has been caused by an undertaker’s operations, remedial measures must be agreed between the authority and the undertaker, at the undertaker’s cost.

Water egress (street surface and utility apparatus)

S11.4.7 Notes for Guidance are provided to cover situations where water issues from the street surface or an undertaker's apparatus.

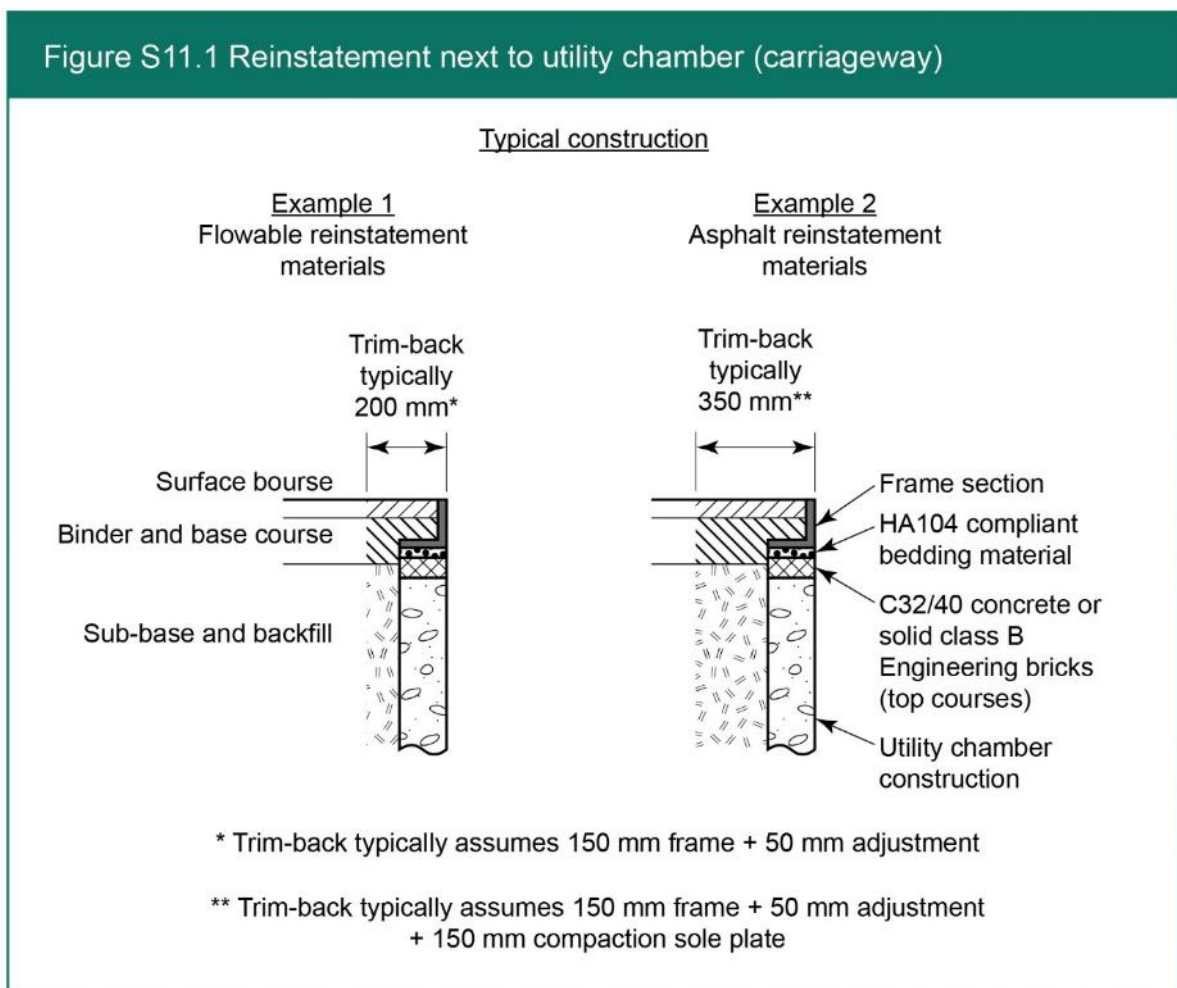
S11.5 Ironwork and apparatus

Access covers, frames and surround

S11.5.1 The installation, construction and maintenance of apparatus such as access covers and frames form an integral part of street works. Works undertaken to apparatus must be to the standard and specification of the owner of the apparatus.

S11.5.2 The sub-structure of an underground chamber supporting an access cover and frame is constructed in such a way that it is not usually possible to achieve a full depth reinstatement in the area defined as the 'access surround'. The access surround is the width between the fixed feature (access frame) and the point at which a full depth reinstatement can be achieved with a full load transfer. The access surround width will vary depending on the size of the access frame and cover.

S11.5.3 Figure S11.1 shows typical construction details relating to a large road access cover and frame of a minimum 600 mm dimension with the access surround constructed in flowable and asphaltic material.



S11.5.4 *Trimback*

1) The width of trimback is dependent on the reinstatement materials used.

Excavation

S11.5.5 Edge preparation of the excavation must comply with S6.8 for flexible roads, S7.5.9 for rigid and modular roads and S8.6 for footpaths, footways and cycle tracks.

S11.5.6 All loose excavation material and the existing frame must be removed and the structure prepared to receive the new frame.

S11.5.7 All loose supporting materials e.g. proprietary packing materials, engineering bricks etc., must be removed.

Reinstatement materials

S11.5.8 Reinstatements around ironwork must comply with S6 for flexible roads, S7 for rigid and modular roads, S8 for footpaths, footways and cycle tracks. Alternatively, they must comply with the following.

S11.5.9 Installation and Quality Control Procedures for all systems must be in accordance with the Product Acceptance Scheme certificate for each system and the current Method Statement. The results of all quality control checks carried out on site by the undertaker and quality assurance information must be compiled in accordance with the requirements of the certificate.

S11.5.10 Before applying any bedding, backfill or surfacing material, the receiving surface must be free from loose excavation material and loose supporting materials, and the area must be clear of debris and free from oil, grease, dust or any other visible contaminant.

S11.5.11 *Reinstatement materials that require compaction*

1) If reinstatement materials are being used that require compaction e.g. granular sub-base, HRA, etc. then the width of trimback required will be the width of the frame base plus the width of the compaction tool sole plate plus 50 mm. Typically, a frame that has a 150 mm flange will require 350 mm width of trimback to accommodate a compaction tool sole plate of 150 mm.

S11.5.12 *Reinstatement materials that do not require compaction*

1) If reinstatement materials are being used that do not require compaction e.g. concrete or PMMA, then a minimum width of trimback will be required. Typically, it will be 50 mm in excess of the flange width e.g. a frame that has a 150 mm base will require 200 mm width of trimback.

S11.5.13 *Bedding materials used in reinstatements*

- 1) Bedding material, including C32/40 strength concrete may be used to fill the excavation to within 100 mm of the road surface and within 350 mm of the edge of the access chamber frame cover.
- 2) A suitable edge sealant and, where necessary, a primer must be applied to the frame and bedding materials.
- 3) All bedding materials must be allowed to cure before applying the surfacing.
- 4) To provide adequate service life in high stress areas such as braking and turning areas, consideration should be given to the use of PMMA.

S11.5.14 *Backfill and sub-base*

- 1) Backfill and sub-base material for ironwork can either be concrete or a PMMA.
 - a) Concrete: backfill must have a Product Acceptance Scheme certificate. Installation and curing must be carried out as per the requirements in the certification. The substrate must be pre-wetted, and any standing water removed.
 - b) PMMA: see S6.5.

S11.5.15 *Surfacing and base*

- 1) Surfacing and base materials in the surround reinstatement to ironwork can be a permanent cold lay surfacing materials (PCSM), asphalt or PMMA.
 - a) PCSM: must comply with A2.4. The product must be suitable for reinstatements around ironwork and compaction must be in accordance with A8. Prior to application, the outside of the frame and all exposed edges and joints must be primed with an edge sealant (see S6.8).
 - b) Asphalt: refer to HA 104/09 in the DMRB Volume 4, Section 2, Part 5 paragraph 9.18 Reinstatement of Surrounding Flexible Carriageway. Also refer to A2 – A4. Compaction must be carried out as per S10.3. In footways, footpaths and cycle tracks, hand compaction may be used as an alternative (see S6.5.3). If the excavation is not sufficiently wide to allow proper compaction (see S6.5), flowable materials must be used as per S11.5.12.
 - c) PMMA: must comply with A2.5.1. PMMA reinstatement materials require no compaction and must be trimmed back a minimum of 200 mm with at least 50 mm extending beyond the width of the flange.

Reinstatements around and between small features

- S11.5.16 When a reinstatement is needed around or between small features, PMMA complying with A2.5.1 must be applied as backfill, sub-base, base and surfacing materials.

S11.6 Test holes

S11.6.1 Test holes over 150 mm diameter are regarded as excavations and must be reinstated to comply with this Code. Test holes of nominal 150 mm diameter or less are not excavations for the purposes of this Code and must be reinstated to a permanent standard within 10 working days of completion of all associated work on the site.

General

S11.6.2 Prior to reinstatement, all test holes should be made safe and maintained in a safe condition.

S11.6.3 Test holes up to 25 mm diameter must be reinstated to an immediate permanent standard.

S11.6.4 Test holes larger than 25 mm diameter may be reinstated to an interim standard, if required.

S11.6.5 In modular surfaces, preference should be given to lifting individual modules before drilling test holes, whenever reasonably practical.

S11.6.6 In unmade ground, test holes must be tamped closed or filled with appropriate materials.

50 mm diameter or less

S11.6.7 Test holes must be reinstated to finish flush with the surface by any of the following methods:

- 1) Using a fine aggregate bound with cement or bitumen for the upper layers as appropriate, and compacted in layers 100 mm thick, or less.
- 2) Using a self-compacting proprietary product.
- 3) Using a flexible sealing plug. The void beneath the flexible sealing plug must be reinstated using sand and cement mix or a proprietary product.
 - a) In bituminous surfaces, all sealing plugs must be coloured black (or dark grey).
 - b) In modular or concrete surfaces, sealing plugs must be coloured white (or light grey) or black (or dark grey) as appropriate.
- 4) If a flexible sealing plug becomes dislodged during the guarantee period, the undertaker must replace it.

50 to 150 mm diameter

S11.6.8 In paved surfaces, test holes must be reinstated using a fine aggregate, appropriately compacted in layers 100 mm thick, or less, and surfaced with appropriate cementitious, cold or hot-lay bituminous materials to finish flush with the surface.

S12 Remedial works

S12.1 General

- S12.1.1 The undertaker is responsible for ensuring that reinstatements comply with the required performance criteria throughout the interim reinstatement and guarantee periods.
- S12.1.2 When determining whether a reinstatement requires any remedial action, the quality of the reinstatement must be assessed relative to the condition of the adjacent surfaces.

S12.2 Safety requirements

- S12.2.1 Should a reinstatement fail any safety requirements of this Code, the surface must be restored to comply with such requirements.

S12.3 Repair of cracking

Interface cracking

- S12.3.1 Cracking along the reinstatement interface greater than 2.5 mm open width at the surface for more than the maximum permitted length shown in Table S12.1, will require remedial action in accordance with the requirements of S12.3.3.

Table S12.1 Interface cracking		
Reinstatement	Surface	Maximum crack length
Small excavations to S1.5.5	All Surfaces	500 mm total cumulative length
Narrow trenches to S1.5.3, Trenches to S1.5.4 and All other openings to S1.5.7	Footway	1000 mm maximum crack length or 10% of reinstatement perimeter whichever is greater
	All carriageway Types	500 mm maximum crack length or 10% of reinstatement perimeter whichever is greater

Cracking beyond reinstatement limits

- S12.3.2 Cracks remote from the reinstatement interface, greater than 2.5 mm open width at the surface for more than 2 m of continuous length, will also require remedial action in accordance with S12.3.3, provided it can reasonably be shown that such cracks occurred directly as a result of the undertakers' works.

Repair of interface cracking

S12.3.3

Cracking along the interface of the reinstatement must be repaired in accordance with the following:

- 1) Crack sealing systems must have a current Product Acceptance Scheme certificate.
- 2) Hot or cold applied systems may be used, subject to manufacturer's recommendation on application under the prevailing weather conditions.
- 3) Treatments must be black in colour, unless otherwise directed by the authority.
- 4) The minimum PSV of the repair system surface is as specified for the type of surfacing (see S2).
- 5) The initial skid resistance must be >55 SRV as measured by the pendulum tester using the narrow slider in accordance with BS EN 13036-4.
- 6) Installation and Quality Control Procedures for all systems must be in accordance with the Product Acceptance Scheme certificate. The results of all quality control checks carried out on site and quality assurance information must be compiled in accordance with the requirements of the Product Acceptance Scheme certificate.
- 7) Preparation must be in accordance with the installation Method Statement and must include cleaning and removal of debris and contamination with a hot air lance. The substrate must be dried fully before applying the crack treatment.
- 8) Depending on the width of the crack the appropriate sealing system must be chosen:
 - a) Cracks between 2.5 and 5 mm wide must be repaired with an overband sealing system, as described in S6.8.8.
 - b) Cracks between 5 mm and 20 mm open width at the surface must be repaired by infilling it with a flexible bituminous sealant and then applying a surface sealing band up to 200 mm wide.
 - c) Cracks widths over 20 mm require a surface repair, as follows:
 - i. The surfacing materials must be removed to the full depth of the surface course or to 40 mm, whichever is the lesser; for the full length of the crack or for 1 m length, whichever is greater. If the crack extends into the binder course layer, the affected materials must be removed and replaced in accordance with S6.4.
 - ii. Surfacing materials must be removed over sufficient width to ensure that the repair patch extends beyond the edges of the crack by a minimum distance equal to the nominal thickness of the replacement surface course. The minimum width of the repair patch is 100 mm.
 - iii. Inclusion of a geosynthetic material at the base of the repair patch could assist in limiting any reoccurrence of cracking.
 - iv. The replacement surface course patch must be laid in accordance with S6.4.

- 9) Where, as a result of an undertaker's works, a crack requiring repair in accordance with S12.3.3 exists within 300 mm of another similar crack repair, the intermediate area must be included in the new repair.

Cracking within high friction surfaces

S12.3.4 Where cracks appear in high friction surfacing, then provided that the surfacing is well bonded to the substrate, and with the agreement of the authority, the cracking may be sealed using a suitable epoxy or similar resin and the high friction surfacing made good. Guidance on this should be sought from the system supplier or the Product Acceptance Scheme certificate.

S12.4 **Repair of settlement beyond reinstatement limits**

S12.4.1 Where significant settlement of the surface beyond the edges of the reinstatement can reasonably be shown to have occurred as a direct result of an undertaker's works, the effective width of the reinstatement must be revised to include the actual width of the settled area. The relevant requirements of this Code apply over the revised width of the reinstatement.

S12.4.2 The extent of any significant settlement beyond the reinstatement limits must be assessed, by agreement, from consideration of the following:

- 1) The apparent extent of any excessive areas of standing water following heavy rainfall; or
- 2) The apparent extent of any significant deterioration of highway shape compared with the existing profile remote from the excavation; or
- 3) The true extent of any significant deterioration of highway shape determined by profile measurements taken before and after the undertaker's works.

S12.5 **Repair of other significant defects**

S12.5.1 The requirement for, and extent of, any repair must be determined by agreement from a consideration of the existing and adjacent surfaces.

S12.5.2 Where it can reasonably be shown that a repair is required as a direct result of an undertaker's works, the undertaker must carry out remedial actions, as necessary.

Appendix A1

Backfill materials

A1.1 Class A – Graded granular materials

- A1.1.1 Materials should be well-graded granular material with a uniformity coefficient greater than 10. Material must, at the time of compaction, be at an appropriate moisture content between +1% and -2% of the optimum moisture content as determined by BS1377: Part 4; Vibrating Hammer Method, Method 3.7, or must be acceptable when subjected to field identification test No.3.
- A1.1.2 Materials must show a maximum Los Angeles coefficient of LA60 when tested in accordance with BS EN 1097-2.
- A1.1.3 Modified Type 1 Unbound Mixture must comply with A10.1.

A1.2 Class B – Granular materials

- A1.2.1 Material at the time of compaction must be at an appropriate moisture content between +1% and -2% of the optimum moisture content as determined by BS1377: Part 4; Vibrating Hammer, Method 3.7, or must be acceptable when subjected to field identification test No.3.

A1.3 Class C – Cohesive/granular materials

- A1.3.1 Materials with less than 50% granular content by mass must, at the time of compaction, have a moisture content of between 0.8 and 1.2 times the plastic limit or be acceptable when subjected to field identification test No.2.
- A1.3.2 Materials with a minimum of 50% granular content by mass must, at the time of compaction, have a moisture content of between +1% and -2% of the optimum moisture content as determined by BS1377: Part 4; Vibrating Hammer, Method 3.7, or must be acceptable when subjected to field identification test No.3.

A1.4 Class D – Cohesive materials

- A1.4.1 Cohesive materials at the time of compaction must have a moisture content of between 0.8 and 1.2 times the plastic limit or be acceptable when subjected to field identification test No. 2.

A1.4.2 Clays that contain insufficient moisture when excavated, or have dried excessively during site storage, as defined by field identification test No. 2, may only be re-used provided that they are wetted to comply with A1.4.1 and compacted in accordance with A8 for Class D Cohesive Materials.

A1.4.3 It may be difficult to compact cohesive materials to uniformly achieve an adequate bearing capacity. Undertakers must select a lump size for clays within the limits specified in A2 and must ensure that all compaction equipment is operated within the requirements of A8. Failure to comply with A2 or A8 will result in unacceptable settlement and variable bearing capacity.

A1.4.4 High silt content materials, as defined by field identification test No. 1, must be compacted in accordance with A8 requirements for Class D Cohesive Materials.

A1.5 Class E – Unacceptable materials

A1.5.1 The following materials, listed as unacceptable in SHW Clause 601 paragraphs 2(ii) and 3, must not be used at any level within the permanent structure of any reinstatement:

- 1) Peat and materials from swamps, marshes or bogs.
- 2) Logs, stumps and perishable materials.
- 3) Materials in a frozen condition. Such materials, if otherwise suitable, can be classified as suitable when unfrozen.
- 4) Clays having a liquid limit exceeding 90, determined in accordance with BS1377: Part 2 Method 4, or a Plasticity Index exceeding 65, determined in accordance with BS1377: Part 2, Method 5.4.
- 5) Materials susceptible to spontaneous combustion.
- 6) Materials having hazardous chemical or physical properties requiring special measures for excavation, handling, storage, transportation, deposition and disposal.

A1.6 Field identification tests

A1.6.1 The following identification tests must be carried out immediately before placement and compaction of backfill material.

Field identification test No 1 – Silt identification

A1.6.2 High silt content materials can usually be identified by a simple hand test:

A1.6.3 Select a moist sample of the fine material only.

A1.6.4 With clean dry hands, rub the sample between the palms, remove the excess material by striking the palms together and wait a few minutes for body heat to dry out any material adhering to the hands. Finally, rub hands together briskly.

A1.6.5 If no significant quantity of material remains adhering to the palms, i.e. the palms are relatively clean, then the sample tested is essentially a silt.

Note: The proportion of granular material discarded to produce the fine sample must be taken into account when estimating the approximate silt content of the bulk material.

Field identification test No 2 – Clay condition

A1.6.6 Clays suitable for compaction with pedestrian controlled compaction plant can usually be identified by a simple roll test:

A1.6.7 Select a sample of small lumps of the fine material only, at a moisture content representative of the bulk material.

A1.6.8 With clean dry hands, take the sample and squeeze together in one hand and release. If the sample crumbles away and mostly fails to hold together into a ball then the sample is too dry for compaction. If not, break off part of the ball and roll between the palms or between one palm and any convenient clean dry flat surface, for example the back of a spade. Roll out the sample into a long thin cylinder until it fractures or begins to show significant transverse cracks.

A1.6.9 If the strand can be rolled into intact or uncracked lengths that are thinner or longer than a typical pencil, i.e. less than 7 mm diameter or more than 175 mm length then the sample is too wet or too plastic for compaction. Any result between the ball and the pencil is acceptable for use provided the bulk of the material consists of lumps smaller than 75 mm.

Field identification test No 3 – Granular condition

A1.6.10 All granular materials including Clause 803 Type 1 granular sub-base must be compacted near to their optimum moisture content. The optimum moisture content can vary considerably depending on the average particle size and to a much smaller extent, on the type of mineral or rock involved. However, a laboratory compaction test is invariably carried out on a sample of material from which the larger particles have been removed. The sample is always compacted in a small smooth sided steel cylinder and the standard methods of compaction bear little similarity with current compaction plant. Experience has shown that the most commonly specified laboratory compaction test i.e. BS1377: Part 4; Vibrating Hammer, Method 3.7 will produce an optimum moisture content result that is typically significantly wetter than the field optimum for a granular material that is to be compacted within a trench using a vibrotamper.

A1.6.11 Granular materials suitable for compaction by pedestrian-controlled plant can usually be identified by a simple visual examination. Typically, the test will identify materials within 1% to 1.5% of the field optimum moisture content depending on the mineral type. Experience has shown that compaction within this visual moisture range will not normally show any significant reduction in compaction performance. The test cannot indicate the actual moisture content of any material, but this is rarely of any relevance as far as an operator is concerned.

A1.6.12 *Preparation*

- 1) Depending on the size of the stockpile, dig out representative samples from beneath the outer surface, at several positions around the outside in a conical shape.

A1.6.13 *Test – Coarse aggregate*

- 1) Examine several of the medium and larger sized particles from each sample extracted.

A1.6.14 *Result*

- 1) Material within the target moisture content range will show a dull sheen when viewed obliquely against the light, with all fines adhering to the larger particles, and no free water will be visible. Material at the dry limit will not show the characteristic sheen, fines will not be strongly adherent and many of the fines will be free. Material at the wet limit will begin to show free moisture collecting in surface grooves or amongst the fines, fines will not be strongly adherent and many of the fines will amalgamate as soggy clusters. Any result between the wet and dry limits is acceptable provided the bulk of the sample is reasonably well graded.
- 2) Sands used as fine fill or as a regulating layer also need to be used near to the optimum moisture content and can be identified by a simple squeeze test.

A1.6.15 *Test – Fine aggregate*

- 1) Take a small sample of representative sand, squeeze in one hand and release.

A1.6.16 *Result*

- 1) If the sample crumbles away and mostly fails to adhere together into a 'ball' then the sample is too dry. Any reasonable degree of adherence is acceptable provided no free water is squeezed out.

Field identification test No 4 – Granular grading

A1.6.17 All unbound granular materials must be reasonably well graded; i.e. must contain a range of particle sizes, from fine to coarse, with an adequate proportion of particles of intermediate sizes. A well-graded material can be compacted to give a dense and stable structure of interlocking particles with a low proportion of air voids within the structure.

A1.6.18 *Preparation*

- 1) Depending on the size of the stockpile, dig out representative samples from beneath the outer surface at several positions around the outside.

A1.6.19 *Test – Granular grading*

- 1) Spread out each sample and examine under good light.

A1.6.20 *Result*

Class A graded granular materials – should not contain any particles greater than 75 mm nominal size and, in general, should be 50 mm or smaller. Smaller particles down to less than 5 mm nominal size should be present in gradually increasing numbers as the size decreases. Finer particles, from sand size down to dust, should be present and will usually be adhering to the larger particles. Fine particles should be visible adhering to around 30% or more of the surface of the majority of the larger particles.

Class B granular materials – should show the same general features as described above but will usually be less well graded overall compared with Class A Graded Granular Materials.

Class C Cohesive/granular materials – will usually contain a much larger proportion of fine material. The granular content should still be less than 75 mm nominal size, down to less than 5 mm nominal size and should not be single sized.

Appendix A2

Key to materials

A2.0 Introduction

A2.0.1 The substantial majority of reinstatements are small rectangular openings and trenches. By implication these reinstatements can be considered to be carried out in restricted or confined areas.

A2.0.2 Undertakers primarily adopt hand laying operations in their reinstatements, rather than machine laying operations that are associated with new-build and larger surface area situations, i.e. those which are not necessarily restricted or confined. In addition to the final compaction of asphalt layers, hand laying operations also include on-site transportation and handling of the asphalt materials.

A2.0.3 Materials in this appendix are predominantly for hand laying operations. Some asphalts incorporating highly modified polymer modified binders (PMBs) may not be suitable for hand-laying and should only be used by agreement. Clause 943 HRA incorporating PMB must not be hand-laid.

Roads – General

A2.0.4 In small excavations and narrow trenches, the preferred binder course mixture may be replaced by any surface course mixture that complies with the Code for the respective road type provided that the same mixture is used in the surface course, see S6.5.

Footways, footpaths and cycle tracks – General

A2.0.5 In all excavations, the preferred binder course mixture may be replaced by any surface course mixture that complies with this appendix and S8. This substitution is limited solely to the binder course layer. Void contents must meet the requirements of Table S10.1 for footpaths

A2.1 Hot rolled asphalt (HRA) mixtures

A2.1.1 All HRA must conform to BS EN 13108-4. Conformity must be established in accordance with BS EN 13108-20 and BS EN 13108-21. Natural gravels are not permitted as coarse aggregate for use in Types 0, 1 and 2 roads.

A2.1.2 Deformation resistance must comply with the limiting wheel tracking requirements for site classifications in accordance with PD6691 Appendix C, Table C.3

A2.1.3 Design Type C mixtures listed in this section may only be used by agreement where satisfactory local experience has been gained in their use.

A2.1.4 Chippings for surface application to HRA surface course mixtures must be coarse aggregate conforming to PD 6691 appendix C, C.2.3 and meet the requirements of C.2.8. The size and grading of chippings must be 14/20 as in Table C.5. Where the existing surface has 8/14 chippings these may be used in the reinstatement.

Surface course mixtures

A2.1.5 The following preferred HRA surface course mixture options may be replaced by any of the permitted mixtures.

A2.1.6 Roads Type 0 and 1

1) The preferred surface course mixture is: HRA 35/14 F surf PMB with the wheel tracking requirements meeting classifications 2 for road Type 0 and classification 1 or 2 for road Type 1. The wheel tracking classification 2 for road Type 1, should be selected for heavily stressed areas such as bus lanes, roundabouts and approaches to pedestrian crossings and traffic lights.

2) Alternative permitted mixtures are:

- a) HRA 30/14 F surf PMB des
- b) HRA 35/14 F surf 40/60 des
- c) HRA 30/14 C surf 40/60 des (before use refer to A2.1.3)
- d) HRA 55/14 F surf 40/60 des
- e) HRA 55/10 F surf 40/60 des

A2.1.7 Roads Type 2

1) The preferred surface course mixture is: HRA 35/14 F surf 40/60 des.

2) Alternative permitted mixtures are:

- a) HRA 30/14 F surf 40/60 rec
- b) HRA 30/14 F surf 40/60 des
- c) HRA 30/14 C surf 40/60 des (before use refer to A2.1.3)
- d) HRA 35/14 surf 40/60 rec
- e) HRA 55/14 F surf 40/60 des
- f) HRA 55/10 F surf 40/60 des

A2.1.8 Roads Type 3 and 4

1) The preferred surface course mixture is: HRA 35/14 F surf 40/60 des.

2) Alternative permitted mixtures are:

- a) HRA 30/14 F surf 40/60 des
- b) HRA 30/14 C surf 40/60 des (before use refer to A2.1.3)
- c) HRA 30/10 or 30/14 F surf 100/150 rec
- d) HRA 55/14 F surf 40/60 des

e) HRA 55/10 F surf 40/60 des

A2.1.9 *Footways, footpaths and cycle tracks*

- 1) The preferred HRA surface course mixture is HRA 15/10F surf 100/150 rec.
- 2) HRA 30/10F surf 70/100 or 100/150 rec is an alternative permitted mixture.
- 3) Areas that exhibit signs of regular trafficking by commercial vehicles or such sites notified to the undertaker by the authority must be reinstated in accordance with S8.7.

HRA binder course mixtures

A2.1.10 *Road Type 0 & 1*

- 1) The binder course mixture must be HRA 60/20 F bin 40/60 des with the wheel tracking requirements meeting classification 2 for road Type 0, and classification 1 or 2 for road Type 1. For road Type 1 classification 2 should be selected for heavily stressed areas such as bus lanes, roundabouts, and approaches to pedestrian crossing and/or traffic lights.

A2.1.11 *Road Types 2, 3 and 4*

- 1) The preferred HRA binder course mixture is HRA 50/20 F bin 40/60.
- 2) Alternative permitted mixtures (a) and (b) below may be used by agreement where satisfactory local experience has been gained in their use.
 - a) Openings up to 500 mm width – HRA 50/14 F bin 40/60.
 - b) Openings over 500 mm width – HRA 60/20 F bin 40/60.

A2.1.12 *Footways, footpaths and cycle tracks*

- 1) The preferred binder course mixtures are HRA 50/20 F bin 100/150 or, HRA 50/20 F bin 70/100 or HRA 50/20 F bin 40/60.
- 2) Alternative permitted mixtures (a) and (b) below may be used by agreement where satisfactory local experience has been gained in their use.
 - a) Openings up to 500 mm width – HRA 50/14 F bin 100/150 or, HRA 50/14 F bin 70/100 or HRA 50/14 F bin 40/60.
 - b) Openings over 500 mm width – HRA 60/20 F bin 100/150 or, HRA 60/20 F bin 70/100 or HRA 60/20 F bin 40/60.
- 3) Areas that exhibit signs of regular trafficking by commercial vehicles or such sites notified to the undertaker by the authority must be reinstated in accordance with S8.7. In such situations the preferred binder course mixture may not be replaced by any carriageway surface course mixture and 100/150 pen material must not be used.
- 4) In areas not subject to vehicular trafficking the preferred binder course mixture may also be replaced by any permitted carriageway surface course mixture.

A2.2 Stone mastic asphalt (SMA) mixtures

A2.2.1 SMA must conform to BS EN 13108-5 and PD 6691. Conformity must be established in accordance with BS EN 13108-20 and BS EN 13108-21. The following SMA mixtures are permitted by this Code, depending upon the detail requirements of the relevant section.

A2.2.2 Requirements for deformation resistance as assessed by wheel tracking performance (WTR) are in accordance with PD6691 appendix D, Table D.2 and the note to that table.

Surface course mixtures

- 1) The required performance properties are to be set by agreement with the authority.
- 2) Certificated TSCS must comply with SHW Clause 942 or the authority's specification.
- 3) SMA mixtures must match the existing nominal size aggregates except for when hand-laying, where mixtures with 10 mm nominal aggregate size must be used to reinstate the existing SMA materials with 20 mm and 14 mm nominal aggregate size. SMA incorporating PMB may only be hand-laid by agreement.

A2.2.3 *Roads Type 0 and 1*

- 1) The permitted mixtures are:
 - a) SMA 14 surf PMB
 - b) SMA 14 surf 40/60
 - c) SMA 10 surf PMB
 - d) SMA 10 surf 40/60
 All with wheel tracking requirements meeting classification 2.
- 2) Alternative permitted mixtures subject to the authority's approval are:
 - e) SMA 6 surf PMB
 - f) SMA 6 surf 40/60
 Both with wheel tracking requirements meeting classification 2.

A2.2.4 *Roads Type 2, 3 and 4*

- 1) The permitted mixtures are:
 - a) SMA 14 surf PMB or 40/60 or 100/150
 - b) SMA 10 surf PMB or 40/60 or 100/150
 Alternative permitted mixtures subject to the authority's approval are:
 - c) SMA 6 surf PMB or 40/60 or 100/150 (see S6.4.3 to S6.4.6)

A2.2.5 *Footways, footpaths and cycle tracks*

- 1) The permitted surface course mixtures, unless advised otherwise by the authority, are:
 - a) SMA 6 surf 40/60
 - b) SMA 6 surf 70/100

c) SMA 6 surf 100/150

SMA binder course mixtures

A2.2.6 Roads Type 0 and 1

- 1) The preferred binder course mixture is SMA 20 bin 40/60 with wheel tracking requirements meeting classification 2.
- 2) Alternative permitted mixture is SMA 14 bin 40/60 with wheel tracking requirements meeting classification 2.

A2.2.7 Roads Type 2, 3 and 4

- 1) The preferred binder course mixtures are:
 - a) SMA 20 bin 40/60 or SMA 20 bin 100/150.
 - b) Openings up to 500 mm width – as a) or SMA 14 bin 40/60 or SMA 14 bin 100/150.

Asphalt concrete mixtures

A2.3

A2.3.1

Asphalt concrete must conform to BS EN 13108-1. Conformity must be established in accordance with BS EN 13108-20 and BS EN 13108-21. The following coated mixtures to BS EN 13108-1 and PD 6691 are permitted depending upon the detailed requirements of the relevant section.

A2.3.2

Where the existing mixture is HDM (heavy duty macadam to the now superseded BS 4987-1) or HMB (high modulus base) and the authority requires the reinstatement to be completed using a similar mixture, the authority must notify the undertaker accordingly.

A2.3.3

Deformation resistance must comply with the limiting wheel tracking requirements for site classification in accordance with PD 6691 appendix B, Table B.4 and the note to that table.

A2.3.4

For road Types 0 and 1, material must comply with the wheel tracking requirements for site classification 2. There is no wheel tracking requirement for other road types.

Surface course mixtures

A2.3.5

All road types

- 1) The coated surface course mixtures to PD 6691 must be AC 10 close surf 100/150.
- 2) AC 10 close surf can be specified to have binder content (B_{act}) higher than those specified in BSI PD 6691 Table B.14 and Table B.15 respectively to enhance workability during installation and improve in-service life. This binder content increase must be done by agreement where evidence of successful experience has been presented; including avoiding adverse impact on rutting and skid resistance.

A2.3.6 *Footways, footpaths and cycle tracks*

- 1) The preferred coated surface course mixture is AC 6 dense surf 100/150 complying with BS EN 13108-1. The binder content (B_{act}) can be specified to be higher than in BSI PD 6691 Table B.14 to enhance workability during installation and improve in-service life.
- 2) AC 10 close surf incorporating 100/150 bitumen complying with BS EN 13108-1 may be used if the trench extends to the carriageway. This enables the use of the same material for the whole trench. The binder content (B_{act}) can be specified to be higher than in BSI PD 6691 Table B.15 to enhance workability during installation and improve in-service life.
- 3) The preferred mixture may be replaced by other agreed alternative materials where the existing surface is a coated mixture to the current PD 6691 of aggregate size finer than 6 mm nominal size, see S8.3 3.

Binder course mixtures

A2.3.7 *Road Type 0 & 1*

- 1) The preferred binder course mixture to PD 6691 is AC 20 dense bin 40/60 with the wheel tracking requirements meeting classifications 2 for road Type 0 and 1 or 2 for road Type 1.

A2.3.8 *Road Types 2, 3 & 4*

- 1) The preferred binder course mixture to PD 6691 is AC 20 dense bin 100/150.

A2.3.9 *Footways, footpaths and cycle tracks*

- 1) The binder course mixture in footways, footpaths and cycle tracks must be either AC 20 dense bin 100/150 or AC 14 dense bin 100/150. For hand compaction (see S 6.5) AC 14 dense bin 100/150 is preferred.

A2.4 **Cold-lay surfacing materials**

Permanent cold-lay surfacing materials (PCSMs)

A2.4.1 Only PCSMs with a current Product Acceptance Scheme certificate can be used for permanent reinstatements.

A2.4.2 PCSMs must be stored, transported, handled and used strictly in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements contained in the Product Acceptance Scheme certificate for that material.

A2.4.3 Approved PCSMs, laid and compacted in accordance with the Product Acceptance Scheme certificate may be used in substitution for any permitted equivalent bituminous material type, e.g., an SMA, AC etc., at the discretion of the undertaker, as follows:

- 1) Permanent cold-lay surfacing material (PCSM), at any position, in all reinstatements in footways, footpaths and cycle tracks.
- 2) Permanent cold-lay binder course (PCBC) in all reinstatements in Type 3 & 4 roads.

3) Permanent cold-lay surface course (PCSC) in all reinstatements in Types 3 & 4 roads.

A2.4.4 The required thickness of the PCSM in a), b) & c) must be as stated in the Product Acceptance Scheme certificate.

A2.4.5 Whenever a potential PCSM binder has begun a Product Acceptance Scheme PCSM approval trial, then regardless of aggregate or material formulation under trial, any material manufactured using that binder must be considered to be an approved deferred set material to PD 6691 for interim use only, with immediate effect.

Deferred set mixtures (DSMs)

A2.4.6 Deferred set coated mixtures must be in accordance with PD 6691 and must be AC 6 dense surf 160/220 DS (6 mm surface course) or AC 10 close surf 160/220 DS (10 mm surface course) or AC 20 dense bin 160/220 DS (20 mm dense binder course).

A2.4.7 The binder grade and amount of flux oil may need to be amended to meet the performance requirements for surfacing mixtures for the duration of the interim reinstatement period. Advice on this is contained in PD 6691 appendix B.2.3.

A2.4.8 Binder viscosity should be adjusted to give approximately the equivalent to 10 days deferred set.

A2.4.9 Deferred set coated mixtures can be used at any position, in all interim and immediate reinstatements, but are not permitted within permanent reinstatements.

A2.5 Flowable materials

Polymer modified mastic asphalt (PMMA)

A2.5.1 1) PMMA must comply with BS EN 13108-6, including binder content to BS EN 12697-1, particle size distribution to BS EN 12697-2 and minimum and maximum indentation to BS EN 12697-20. PMMA must be CE Marked to BS EN13108-6 or have a Product Acceptance Scheme.

A2.5.2 PMMA must have the following properties declared:

- Grading limits as defined in section 5.2.2 from BS EN 13108-6:2016.
- Binder limits as defined in section 5.2.3 from BS EN 13108-6:2016.
- Indentation limits as defined in section 5.3.2 from BS EN 13108-6:2016.

Foamed concrete for reinstatements (FCR)

A2.5.3 FCRs are cement-bound materials that have been prepared off-site, generally as prescribed mixes, at an approved mixing plant and under appropriate quality control procedures. They are flowable and do not require compaction when placed. FCRs do not necessarily incorporate a coarse aggregate.

A2.5.4 FCRs must not encase cables or be used within 300 mm of a gas pipe.

- A2.5.5** All aggregate used in FCRs must pass a 6.3 mm sieve and comply with the MP and FP grading limits given in BS EN 12620. Larger size aggregate may be used provided it can be shown to be practicable.
- A2.5.6** The composition of recycled aggregate including recycled concrete aggregate must be classified by hand sorting coarse aggregate particles in accordance with BS EN 933-11. The test must be carried out by a suitably trained laboratory technician competent in classifying the constituent classes in accordance with the test method. The content of other materials (Class X) must not exceed 1% by mass or by volume, whichever is the greater.
- A2.5.7** FCR permissible constituents must exclude potash and incinerator bottom ash aggregate (IBAA).
- A2.5.8** Layer thickness and compressive strength at 7 days requirements must be in accordance with Table A2.1.

Table A2.1 FCRs minimum layer thickness and compressive strength requirements

Layer	Road type					Footway/ footpath/ cycle track
	0	1	2	3	4	
Base	NP	NP	NP	300 mm C1.5/2	200 mm C1.5/2	---
Base & Sub-base	NP	450 mm C3/4	450 mm C3/4	450 mm C1.5/2	350 mm C1.5/2	---
Sub-base or below	150 mm C1.5/2	150 mm C1.5/2	150 mm C1.5/2	150 mm C1.5/2	150 mm C1.5/2	100 mm C1.5/2
Note: NP = Not permitted Minimum asphalt overlay thickness as per A3 to A7. FCR is not permitted as CBGM base replacement.						

- A2.5.9** FCR for backfilling excavations and trenches under carriageway must have the following compressive strengths:
- 1) A minimum cube compressive strength of 4 N/mm² at 7 days.
 - 2) A maximum cube compressive strength of 10 N/mm² at 7 days.
- A2.5.10** The compressive strength must be determined by testing foamed concrete cubes that have been made in accordance with BS EN 12390-1, except that the FCR must be placed in the mould without any tamping or vibration other than gently rocking the mould on a firm base. Test cubes must be cured in accordance with BS EN 12390-2 and tested for compressive strength in accordance with BS EN 12390-3.
- A2.5.11** The compressive strength of FCR must be determined in accordance with the principles of BS EN 12390 part 3, and the following:
- 1) Test specimens may be prepared at the time of placement by casting within a test mould or recovered from site by extracting cores from the reinstatement.

- 2) Specimen shape and dimensions must be in accordance with BS EN 12390 part 1 with the addition that specimens may also be manufactured with an aspect ratio of 1. Flowable moulds may be manufactured from cellular foam (preferably polystyrene) and include a cellular foam lid. The samples must not be compacted except for minimal tamping to allow the mould to be filled without leaving excessive areas of voids.
- 3) The top and bottom surfaces of core test specimens may be grouted to ensure flat, parallel loading surfaces.
- 4) Following preparation or recovery, the test samples must be stored upright at either 20°C or 40°C, depending on the nature of the material (in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions), and tested in compression at 7 days after placement of the material on site.

A2.5.12 FCRs must be produced to prescribed mix formulations by an approved mixing plant in accordance with approved manufacturing processes under quality control procedures.

A2.5.13 The wet density of FCRs must be checked prior to placement. Depending on the manufacturer's instructions, the quality of the foaming agent added on site must be checked prior to being incorporated in the mix. Any on-site addition of a foaming agent must be in accordance with the approved mix design.

A2.5.14 In excavations containing water, the minimum density for foamed concrete is 1050 kg/m³.

A2.5.15 The sub-base and base must not be reinstated over FCR until it has attained sufficient strength to allow compaction of the material.

A2.5.16 FCRs must not be tamped or compacted unless otherwise specified by the manufacturer.

A2.5.17 To avoid FCRs flowing into damaged drains or ducts in or adjacent to the excavation, plastic sheeting or other protective measures must be used during pouring and curing.

A2.5.18 FCRs must be cured for the period specified by the manufacturer. During this period, the reinstatements must be protected.

A2.6 Reinstatement materials for micro trenches

Specification for granular material

A2.6.1 The granular bedding material must comply with the requirements of Table A2.2.

Table A2.2 BS EN 13242, fine aggregates for micro trenching

Category for general grading requirements	Category G _{F80}
Category for tolerances on manufacturer's declared typical grading	GT _{FNR} (no requirement)
Category for maximum values of fines content	Gravel – f_3 Crushed rock recycled aggregate – f_{11}
Aggregate size, mm	0/4 or 0/6

- A2.6.2 The size fraction of the aggregate passing the 0.425 mm size test sieve must be non-plastic as defined by and tested in accordance with BS 1377-2.

Specification for indicator infill material

- A2.6.3 This material must comply with the requirements of Table A2.3

Table A2.3 Performance criteria of the indicator infill material

Performance criteria	Procedure	Requirement
Material type	NA	Thermoset resin
Permanent deformation resistance	Wheel tracking to BS 598 Part 110:1996 at 60°C	< 1 mm rut depth
Tensile bond strength	Tensile bond tested in accordance with appendix J in TRL report 176	≥ 0.75 MPa
Elongation	BS EN ISO 527-1 & 3 – Plastics – determination of tensile properties	> 150%
Void Content	BS EN 12697-8	< 1%
Notes: NA = Not Applicable		

Specification for surface infill material

A2.6.4

This material must comply with the requirements of Table A2.4.

Table A2.4 Performance criteria of the surface infill material		
Performance criteria	Procedure	Requirement
Material type	NA	Thermoset resin
Permanent deformation resistance	Wheel tracking to BS 598 Part 110:1996 at 60°C	< 1 mm rut depth
Tensile bond strength	Tensile bond tested in accordance with appendix J in TRL report 176	≥ 0.75 MPa
Elongation	BS EN ISO 527-1 & 3 – Plastics – determination of tensile properties	> 150%
Void Content	BS EN 12697-8	< 1%
Initial skid resistance on application	Skid resistance (SRV) by the pendulum method BS EN 13036-4: 2003 using the narrow slider with measurements on scale C	> 60 SRV
Retained skid resistance	Skid resistance (SRV) by the pendulum method BS EN 13036-4 using the narrow slider with measurements on scale C	> 50 SRV
Spread rate	Spread rate measured after wheel tracking at 60°C	< 1.5 mm
Initial texture depth	Determined by the draft linear sand patch test	> 1.5 mm
Notes: NA = Not Applicable		

A2.6.5

Alternative materials may be proposed for infill of micro trenching. This must be supported by a track record of use and a Product Acceptance Scheme accreditation. Otherwise, materials must follow A9 for approval.

A2.7

Structural layer thickness tolerances

A2.7.1

Several individual layers of material, commonly termed lifts, may be required to reinstate a structural layer.

A2.7.2

The thickness of each complete structural layer is specified as a nominal value.

A2.7.3

The lower tolerance for the thickness of a structural layer must be as follows:

- 1) -5 mm for the surface course
- 2) -10 mm for any other structural layer comprising bound material
- 3) -20 mm for any other structural layer comprising unbound material

A2.7.4 There is no upper tolerance for structural layer thickness. However, where large thicknesses of surface course are used:

- 1) the requirements for compacted lift thicknesses under A2.6 must be met, as must the in-situ air-voids through the full depth of the as-laid surface course layer, as set out in S10.2.8.
- 2) the required combined binder and base course material thickness is still required, unless the binder course mixture is replaced with surface course mixture, as permitted by A2.0.4 and A2.0.5.
- 3) the surface profile performance requirements set out in S2.2 must not be exceeded.

A2.7.5 Any combination of permitted tolerances for the thickness of each structural layer of bituminous and/or cement bound mixtures must not result in any of the following:

- 1) An overall reduction in thickness of the bound pavement, excluding the sub-base, of more than 15 mm from the specified nominal thickness in a road, subject to an absolute minimum of 100 mm of bound materials.
- 2) An overall reduction in the thickness of the bound pavement, excluding the sub-base, of more than 10 mm from the specified nominal thickness in a footway, subject to an absolute minimum of 60 mm of bound materials.
- 3) A non-compliance with the Code, if the combined thickness of the relevant layers equals or exceeds that of the Code requirements, provided that each individual lift meets the thickness requirements of Tables A2.1 or A2.2 and the bituminous mixtures meet the void requirements of S10.2.3.

A2.8

Compacted lift thickness

A2.8.1 The compacted thickness of all individual lifts within all reinstatement structural layers must be in accordance with the following requirements:

Bituminous mixtures

A2.8.2 The compacted thickness of all individual lifts of bituminous mixtures must be in accordance with Table A2.5.

Table A2.5 Compacted lift thickness (mm) – Bituminous mixtures

Material type	PD 6691 reference	Compacted lift thickness (mm)		
		Minimum at any point	Nominal lift thickness	Maximum at any point
6 mm DSC	AC 6 dense surf	15	20 – 30	40
10 mm CGSC	AC 10 close surf	25	30 – 40	50
15/10 HRA	HRA 15/10 F surf	25	30	50
30/10 HRA	HRA 30/10 F surf	30	35	45
30/14 HRA	HRA 30/14 F surf HRA 30/14 C surf	35	40	50
35/14 HRA	HRA 35/14 F surf HRA 35/14 C surf	45	50	60
55/14 HRA	HRA 55/14 F surf	40	45	55
55/10 HRA	HRA 55/10 F surf	35	40	50
6 mm SMA	SMA 6 surf	15	30 - 40	45
10 mm SMA	SMA 10 surf	20	25 - 50	55
14 mm SMA	SMA 14 surf	30	35 - 50	55
20 mm SMA	SMA 20 surf	40	45 -60	65
10 mm PA	PA 10*	25*	30 – 35*	40*
20 mm PA	PA 20*	40*	45 – 60*	65*
50/14 HRA	HRA 50/14 F bin	30	35-65	85
50/20 HRA BC	HRA 50/20 bin	40	45 - 80	100
60/20 HRA BC	HRA 60/20 bin	40	45 - 80	100
14 mm SMA BC	SMA 14 bin	25	30 - 60	65
20 mm SMA BC	SMA 20 bin	40	50 - 100	110
14 mm DBC	AC 14 dense bin	35	40 - 70	80
20 mm DBC	AC 20 dense bin	40	50 - 100	110

Note

The binder course thickness must be adjusted accordingly to the thickness of the surface course to comply with the requirements in appendices A3 to A7.

* The use of Porous Asphalt (PA) is now very limited in the UK except for specialist uses such as sustainable drainage systems. Where porous asphalt surfaces are encountered refer to S6.4.13 (BS EN 13108 – 7 contains specifications for this group of asphalts and guidance on the appropriate material should be obtained from the authority).

Non-bituminous materials

A2.8.3

The compacted thickness of all individual lifts of non-bituminous materials must be in accordance with Table A2.6.

Table A2.6 Compacted lift thickness – Non-bituminous materials

Material	Compacted lift thickness (mm)		
	Minimum at any point	Nominal lift thickness	Maximum at any point
CBGM base	100	120 to 150	200
C25/30 concrete	100	As required	As existing
C32/40 concrete	100	As required	As existing
GSB1	75	100 to 150	200
Classes A & B	75	100 to 150	200
Classes C & D	75	100 to 150	200
SMF-A & SMF-B	75	100 to 150	200
SMF-C & SMF-D	75	100 to 150	200

A2.9

Bituminous laying temperatures

A2.9.1

The laying temperatures for bituminous mixtures must be in accordance with Table A2.7.

Table A2.7 Laying temperatures– Bituminous materials

Material	Binder grade	Maximum temperature at any stage (°C)	Minimum temperatures (°C)	
			Arrival *	Minimum rolling#
CGSC	100/150	170	120	95
DSC	160/220	170	110	85
DBC	40/60	190	130	100
	70/100	180	125	95
	100/150	170	120	90
	160/220	170	110	80
HRA SC#	40/60	190	140	110
	70/100	180	125	90
	100/150	170	120	85
HRA BC	40/60	190	130	105
	70/100	180	125	90
	100/150	170	120	85
SMA SC SMA BC	40/60	200	130	100
	70/100	180	125	90
	100/150	170	120	85
Porous Asphalt	125	135	110	85
	190	145		

Notes to Table A2.6:

1 * = In the lorry within 30 minutes after arrival on site.

2 For coated slag mixtures temperatures may be 10°C lower than the recommended values.

3 # = See Table A2.8 for the final rolling temperatures when chippings are applied to HRA surface courses.

Table A2.8 Final rolling temperatures - HRA

Binder grade	Minimum temperature (°C) at completion of rolling
40/60	85
70/100	80
100/150	75

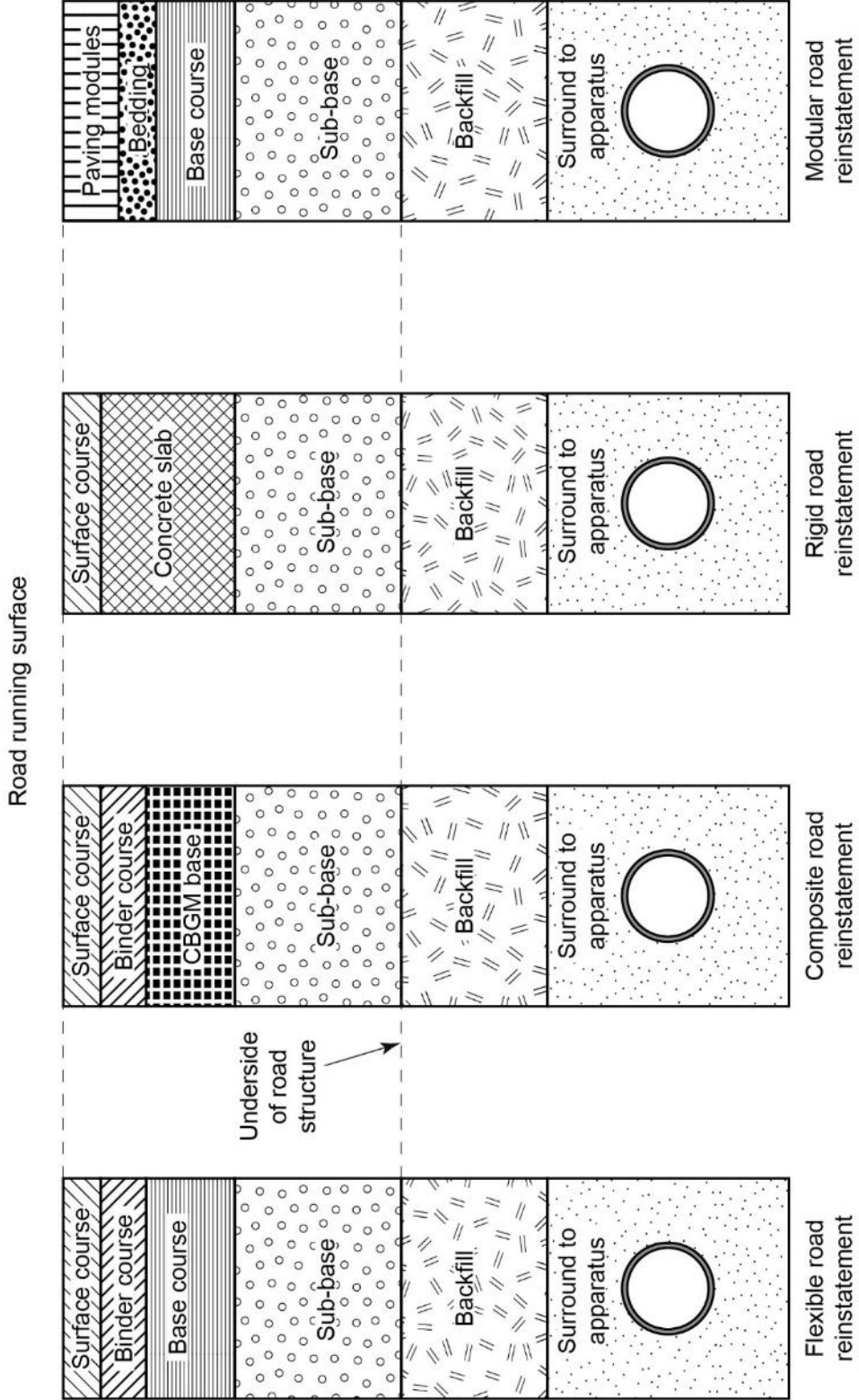
Note: When using modified bitumen or additives, different temperatures might be applicable.

A2.10 Identification of structural layers

Road structures

A2.10.1 For the purposes of defining permissible material options, layer thickness etc, this Code classifies road structures as being of flexible, composite, rigid or modular design. Road structures assumed to be representative of each of these designs are shown in Figure A2.1. For each design, a typical reinstatement structure identifying the principal structural layers is also shown.

Figure A2.1 Typical reinstatement structure within recognised road designs



A2.10.2 Permitted materials and layer thickness for road structures are specified as follows:

- 1) Flexible design – see A3.0 to A3.4
- 2) Flexible sub-structure – see A3.5
- 3) Composite design – see A4.0 to A4.3
- 4) Composite sub-structure – see A4.4 to A4.5
- 5) Rigid design – see A5.0 to A5.2
- 6) Modular design – see A6.1 to A6.3

A2.10.3 All layer thicknesses are in millimetres.

Footway, footpath and cycle track structures

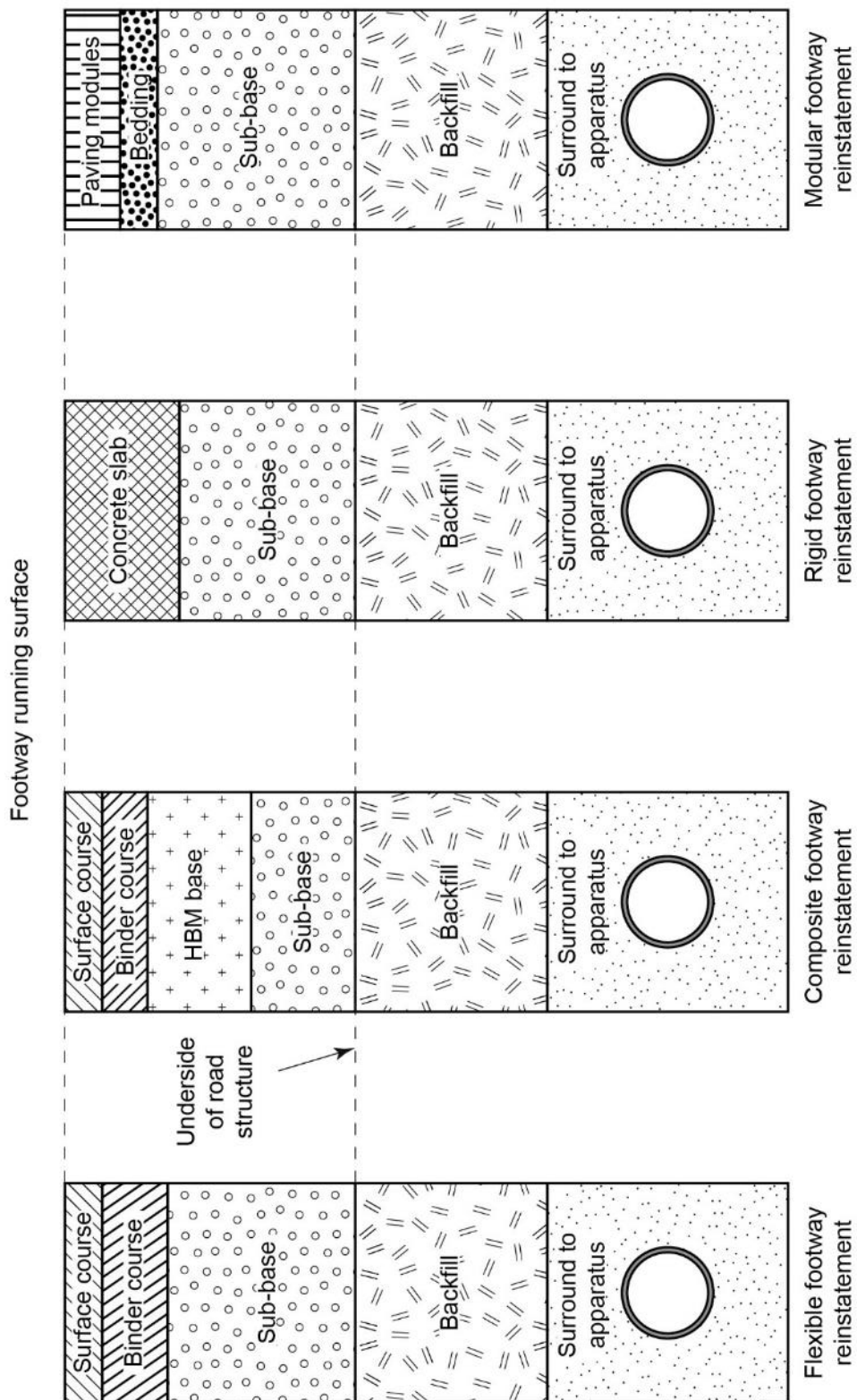
A2.10.4 Footway, footpath and cycle track structures are classified as flexible, composite, rigid or modular. Structures assumed to be representative of each are shown in Figure A2.2, including typical reinstatements, identifying the principal structural layers.

A2.10.5 Permitted materials and layer thickness for footway, footpath and cycle track structures are specified in:

- 1) A7.1 for flexible and composite structures;
- 2) A7.2 for rigid structures; and
- 3) A7.3 for modular structures.

A2.10.6 All layer thicknesses are in millimetres.

Figure A2.2 Typical reinstatement structure within recognised footway designs



A2.11

Key to materials

A2.11.1

For the purposes of defining the main material options, layer thickness, etc. required by this Code, A3 to A7 inclusive show the principal structural layers within cross-sections of typical reinstatement designs in each of the main surface categories. Materials are denoted by the symbols in Table A2.9.

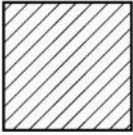

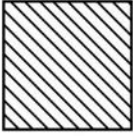

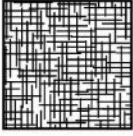


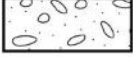



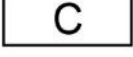

A2.11.2

Proprietary asphalt materials are not included in Table A2.9, given their specialist and limited application, an example being PMMA which may be used in footway surface courses and access surrounds to larger apparatus in roads.

A2.11.3

ARMs are not shown, given the wide range of options and material variations.

Table A2.9 Key to reinstatement materials

 <p>HRASC ACCSC SMASC</p>  <p>HRASC ACCSC ACDSC SMASC PCSC</p>	<p>HRASC - Hot Rolled Asphalt Surface Course See A2.1.1</p> <p>ACCSC - Asphalt Concrete Close Surface Course See A2.3.1</p> <p>ACDSC - Asphalt Concrete Dense Surface Course See A2.3.1</p> <p>SMASC - Stone Mastic Asphalt Surface Course See A2.2.1</p> <p>PCSC - Permanent Cold-lay Surface Course See A2.4.1</p>
 <p>HRABC ACBC SMABC</p>  <p>HRABC ACBC SMABC PCBC</p>	<p>HRABC - Hot Rolled Asphalt Binder Course See A2.1.2</p> <p>ACBC - Asphalt Concrete Binder Course See A2.3.2</p> <p>SMABC - Stone Mastic Asphalt Binder Course See A2.2.2</p> <p>PCBC - Permanent Cold-lay Binder Course See A2.4.1</p>
 <p>DSM PCSM</p>	<p>DSM - Deferred Set Mixtures See A2.4.2</p> <p>PCSM - Permanent Cold-lay Surfacing Material See A2.4.1</p>
 <p>Concrete</p>	<p>Concrete - Pavement Quality Concrete To SHW Clause 1001</p>
 <p>CBGM base</p>	<p>CBGM base - Cement Bound Granular Mixture See S6.3.3</p>
 <p>HBM</p>	<p>HBM - Hydraulically Bound Materials See A10.3</p>
 <p>GSB 1</p>	<p>GSB 1 - Type 1 unbound mixture or modified type 1 unbound mixture See A10.1</p>
 <p>Class A</p>	<p>Class A - Graded granular backfill material See A1.1</p>
 <p>Class B</p>	<p>Class B - Granular backfill material See A1.1</p>
 <p>Class C</p>	<p>Class C - Cohesive granular backfill material See A1.1</p>
 <p>Class D</p>	<p>Class D - Cohesive backfill material See A1.1</p>

A2.12

Key to reinstatement methods

A2.12.1

S6.1, S7.1 and S8.1 set out the permissible reinstatement methods for all the main types of construction categories covered by the Code. A3 to A7, inclusive, indicate different materials and material thicknesses for each permissible reinstatement method, which may also vary between different road categories. Table A2.10 summarises these permissible reinstatement methods.

Table A2.10 Key to reinstatement methods

Reinstatement method (at first visit)	Flexible & composite roads S6		Rigid & modular roads S7			Footways, footpaths & cycle tracks S8		
	Flexible (A3.0 - A3.4 incl.)	Composite (A4.0 - A4.3 incl.)	Rigid (A5.0 - A5.2 incl.)	Modular		Flexible (A7.1)	Rigid (A7.2)	Modular (A7.3)
				Bituminous base (roadbase) (A6.1)	Composite base (roadbase) (A6.2)	Granular base (roadbase) (A6.3)		
All permanent	Method A (Types 0-4 incl.)	Method A (Types 0-4 incl.)	Method A (Types 0-4 incl.)	Method A (Types 3, 4 only)	Method A (Types 3, 4 only)	Method A (Types 3, 4 only)	Method A	Method A
Interim with permanent binder course	Method B (Types 0-4 incl.)	Method B (Types 0-4 incl.)	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	Method B	N/A
Interim with permanent base	Method C (Types 0-4 incl.)	Method C (Types 0-4 incl.)	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Interim with permanent sub-base	Method D (Types 0-4 incl.)	Method D (Types 0-4 incl.)	Method D (Types 0-4 incl.)	Method D (Types 3, 4 only)	Method D (Types 3, 4 only)	Method D (Types 3, 4 only)	Method D	Method D
Permanent incorporating interim surface overlay	N/A	N/A	Method E (Types 0-4 incl.)	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

A2.13 Summarised selection process for hot lay flexible materials

A2.13.1 Specific to the hot-lay reinstatement of flexible roads and footways (including footpaths and cycle tracks), different parts of the Code set out the following criteria:

- overall class, layer designation and mixture design for HRA, SMA and AC (A2.1 to A2.3);
- different thicknesses of mixture layers (A3 and A7);
- specific requirements and limitations for surface courses (S6.4 and S8.3).

A2.13.2 The overall process for selecting the correct materials to reinstate flexible roads and footways is particularly complex at the reinstatement design selection stage. Figure S0.1 provides a generic overview of this process, but to assist practitioners, Figures A2.3, A2.4 and A2.5 respectively set out the summarised overall processes specific to:

- Types 0 and 1 flexible roads
- Types 2, 3 and 4 flexible roads
- Flexible footways, footpaths and cycle tracks

Figure A2.3 Permanent reinstatement options for hot lay flexible materials (roads types 0 and 1)

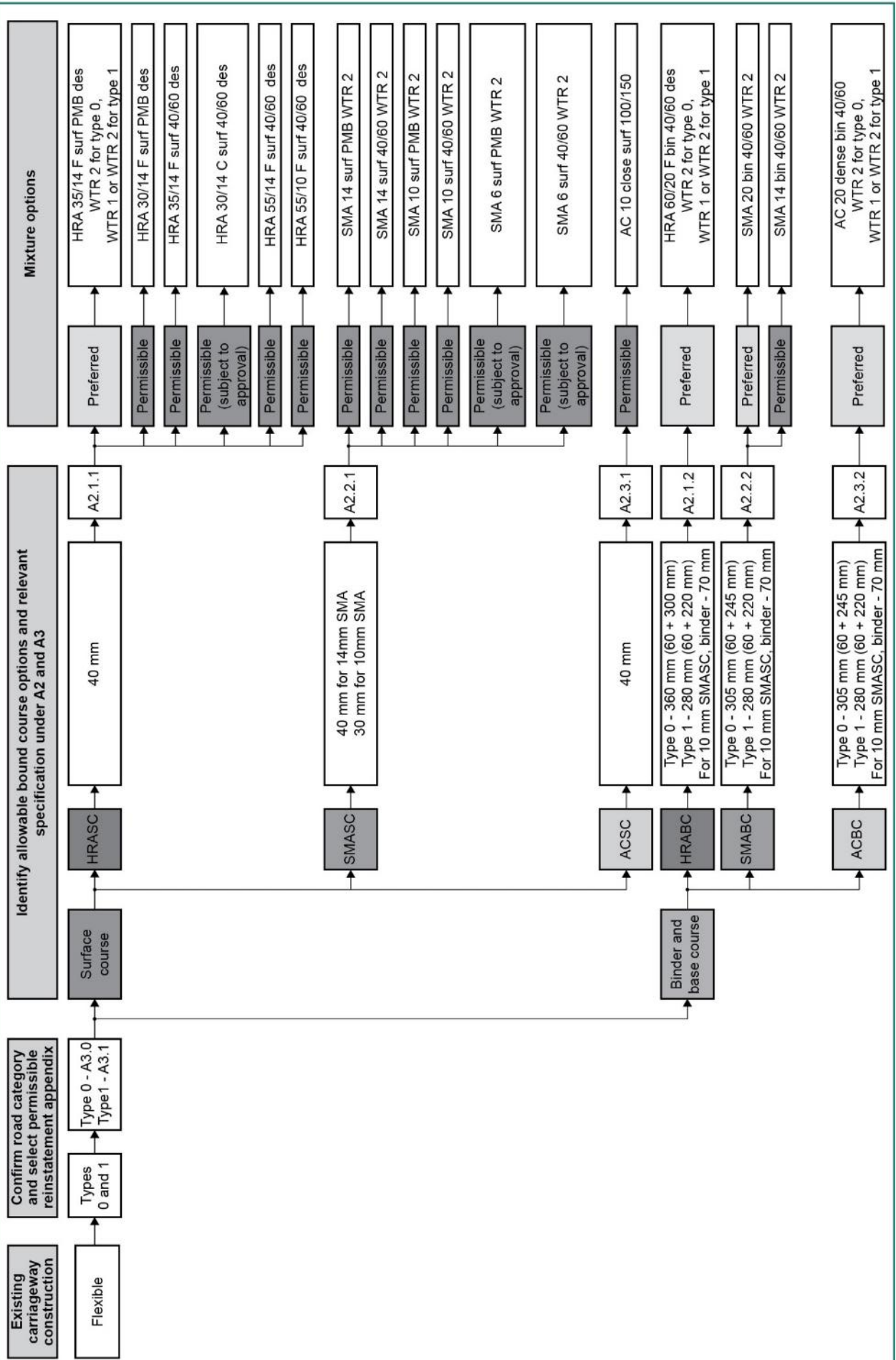


Figure A2.4 Permanent reinstatement options for hot lay flexible materials (road types 2, 3 and 4)

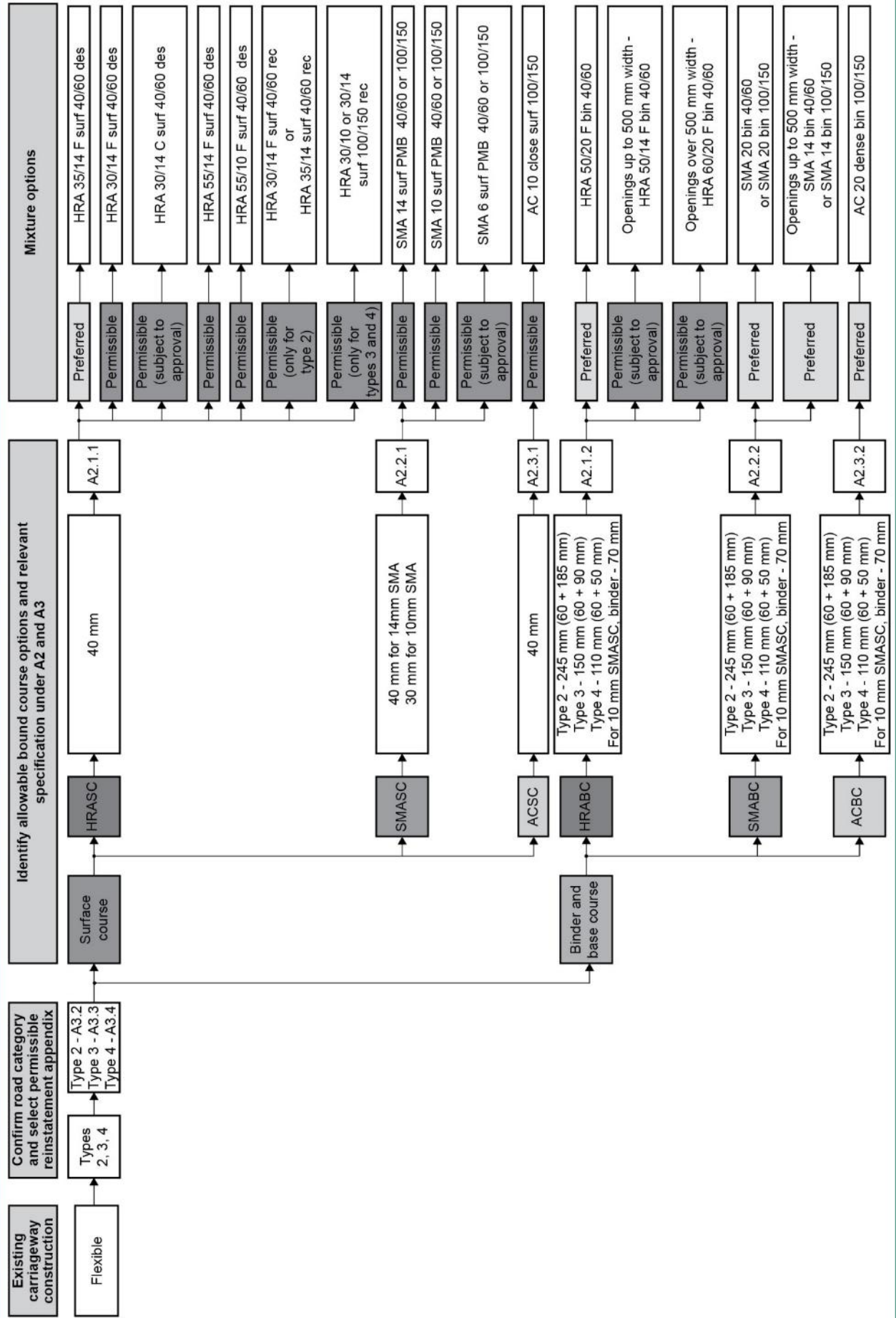


Figure A2.5 Permanent reinstatement options for hot lay flexible materials (footways, footpaths and cycle tracks)

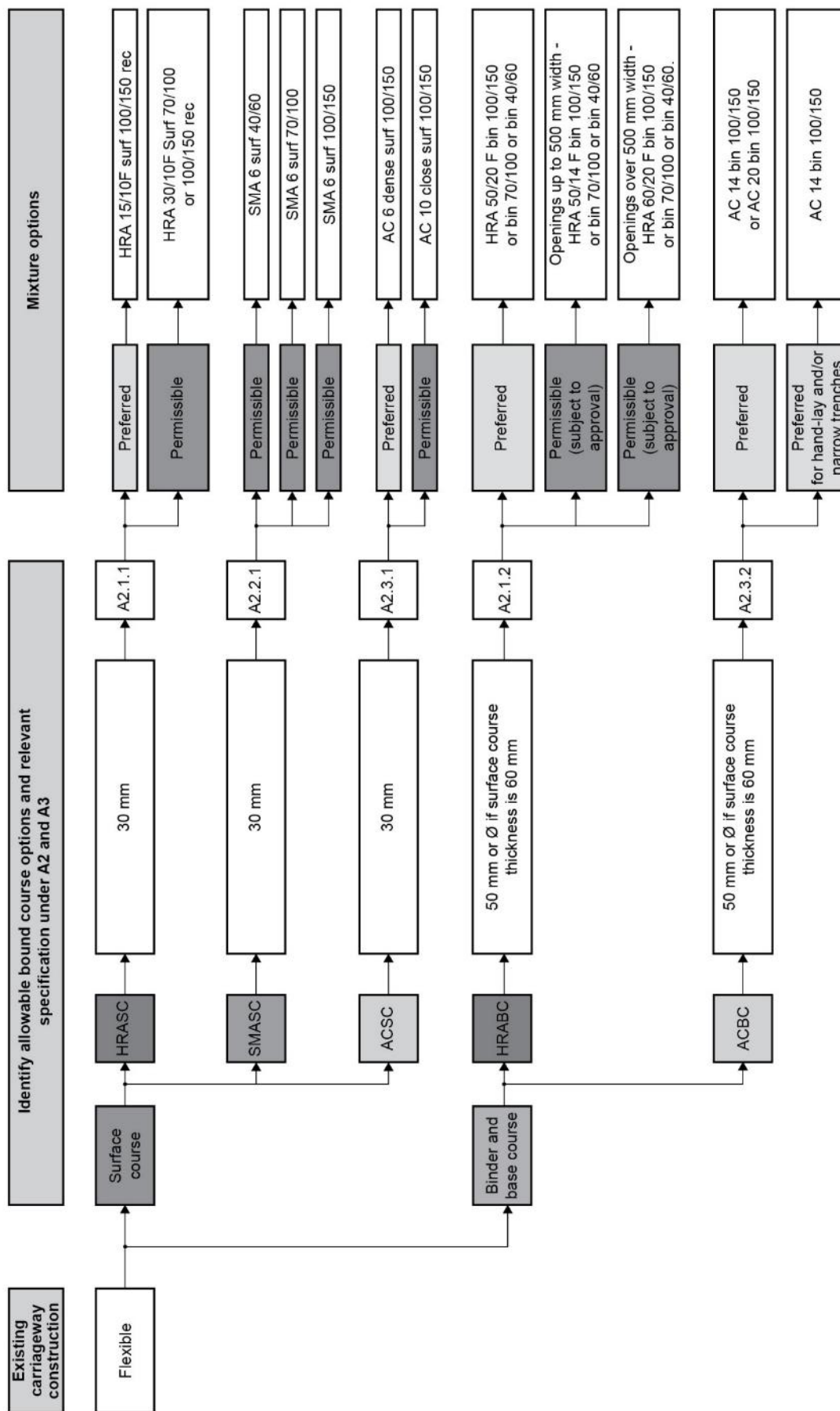
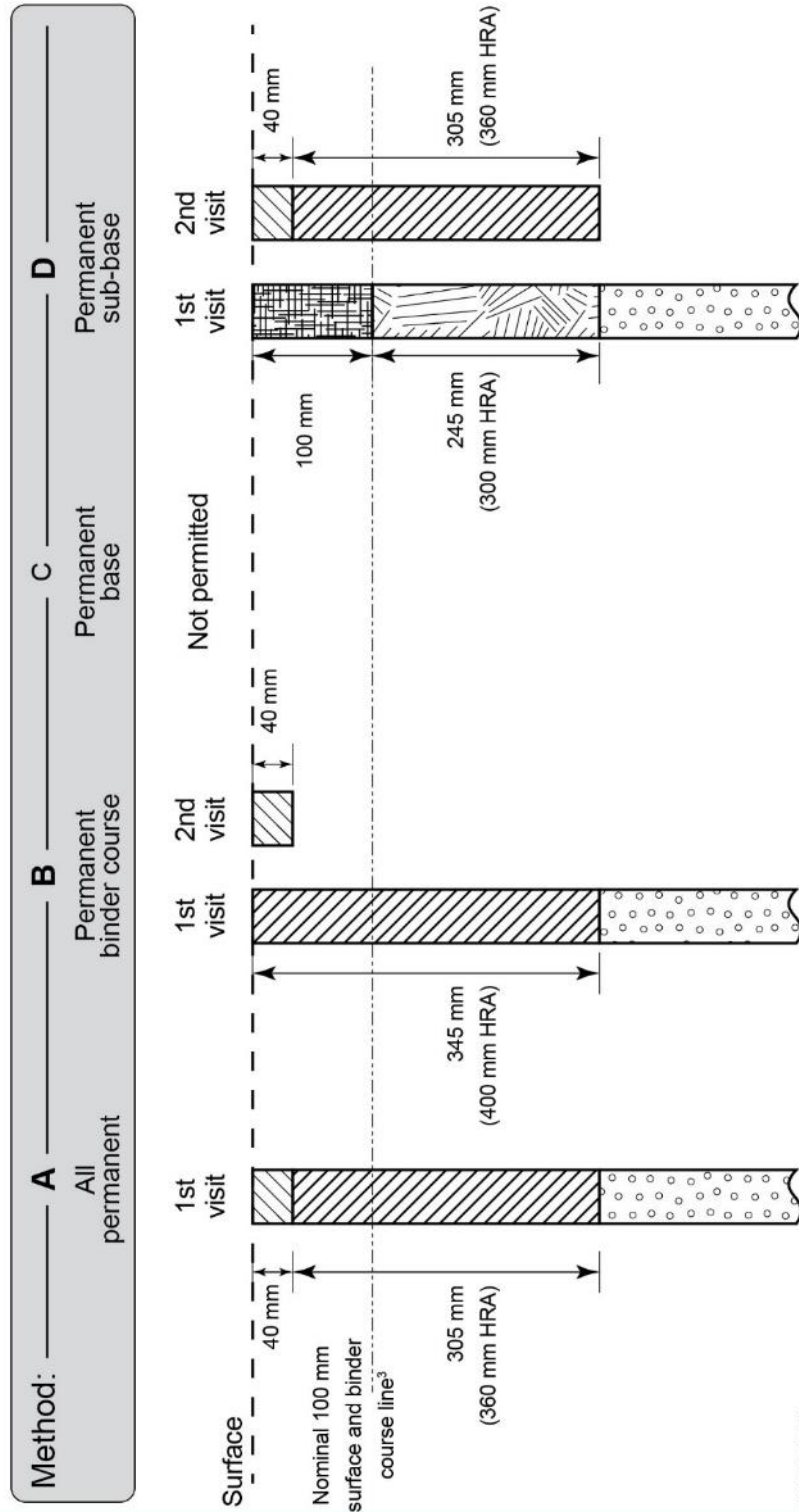


Figure A3.1 Flexible roads type 0

Not to scale

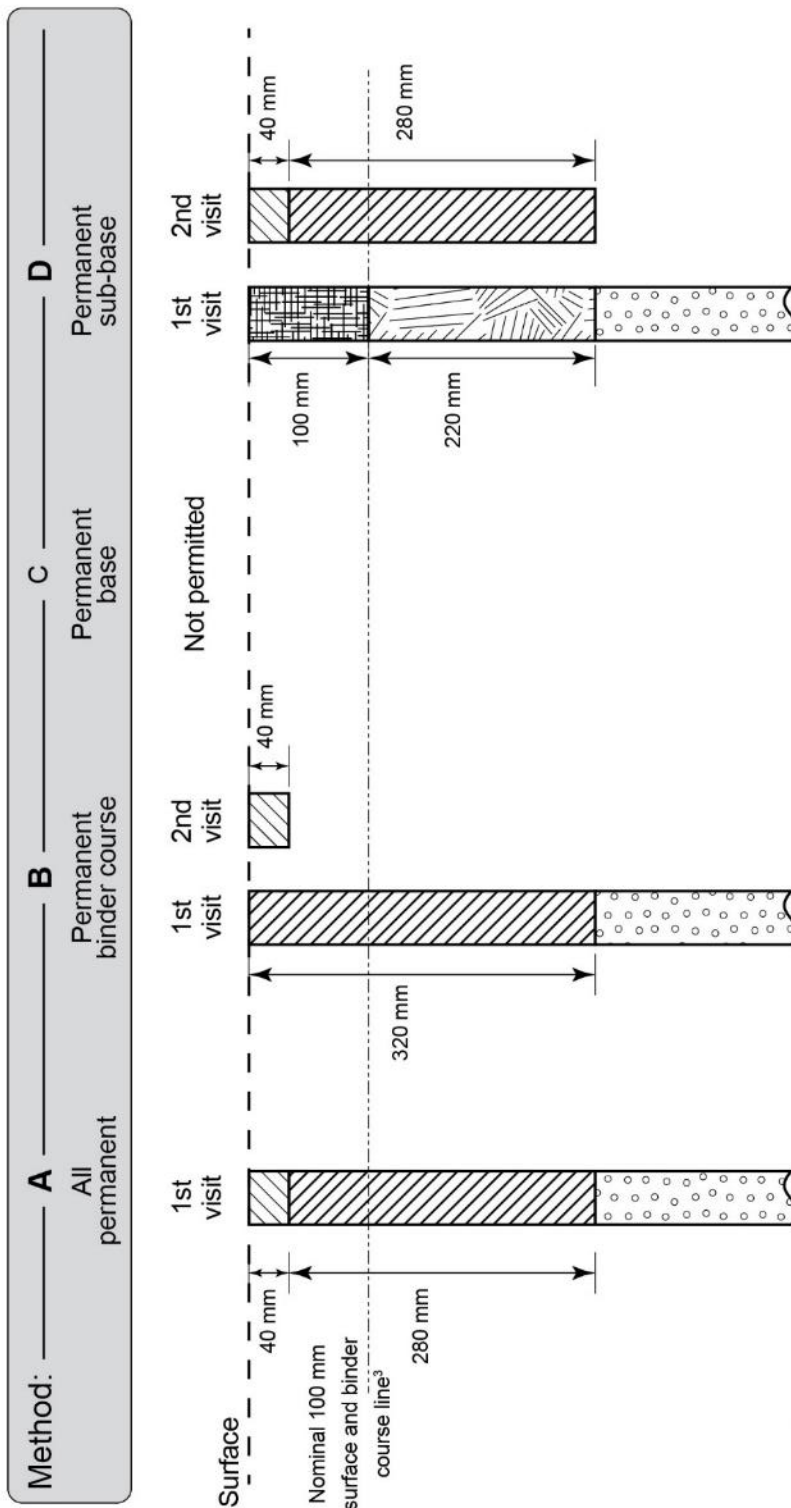


NOTES:

- 1) Sub-base in accordance with A3.6;
- 2) For alternative reinstatement materials refer to A9;
- 3) Surface and binder course thickness must be in accordance with Table A2.4. Where the surface course compacted thickness differs from 40 mm, the binder course thickness must be adjusted to give a total minimum thickness of 100 mm (surface + binder course);
- 4) Where HRABC is used the thickness is increased for all reinstatement methods to those indicated in the brackets, e.g. 360mm for combined base/binder course for method A;
- 5) PMMA may be used as base, binder or surface course in small excavations and narrow trenches (see S6.5).

Figure A3.2 Flexible roads type 1

Not to scale

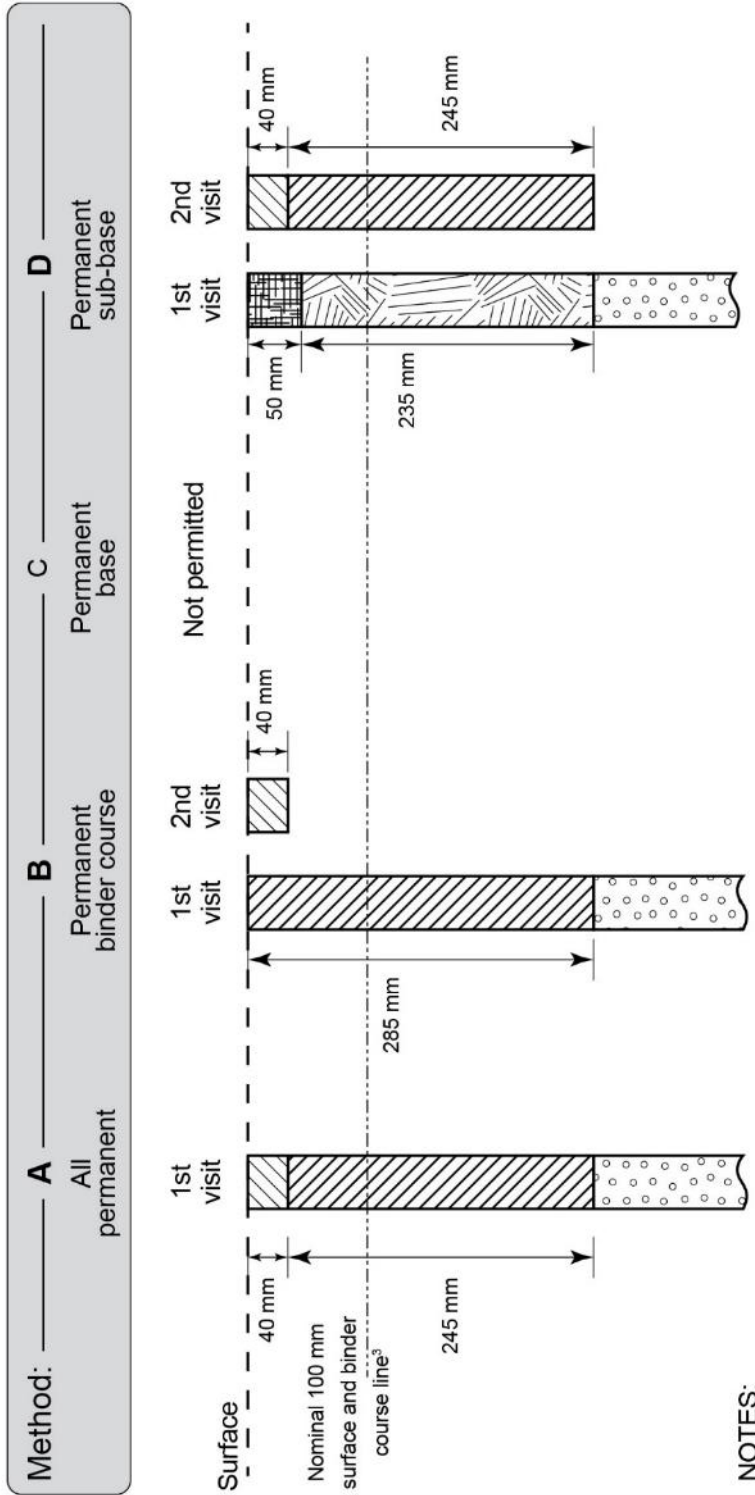


NOTES:

- 1) Sub-base in accordance with A3.6;
- 2) For alternative reinstatement materials refer to A9;
- 3) Surface and binder course thickness must be in accordance with Table A2.4. Where the surface course compacted thickness differs from 40 mm, the binder course thickness must be adjusted to give a total minimum thickness of 100 mm (surface + binder course);
- 4) PMMA may be used as base, binder or surface course in small excavations and narrow trenches (see S6.5);
- 5) HBM and FCR can be used as combined sub-base and base with a minimum total asphalt overlay of 180 mm. See Tables A10.6 and A2.1, respectively.

Figure A3.3 Flexible roads type 2

Not to scale



NOTES:

- 1) Sub-base in accordance with A3.6;
- 2) For alternative reinstatement materials refer to A9;
- 3) Surface and binder course thickness must be in accordance with Table A2.4. Where the surface course compacted thickness differs from 40 mm, the binder course thickness must be adjusted to give a total minimum thickness of 100 mm (surface + binder course);
- 4) Where a road has been constructed, by the authority, to HD 26 design standards, and informs the undertaker accordingly, the total asphalt thickness shall be increased to 320 mm (assuming 100/150 pen) by the use of additional binder course material;
- 5) PMMA may be used as base, binder or surface course in small excavations and narrow trenches (see S6.5);
- 6) HBM and FCR can be used as combined sub-base and base with a minimum total asphalt overlay of 150 mm. See Tables A10.6 and A2.1, respectively.

Figure A3.5 Flexible roads type 4

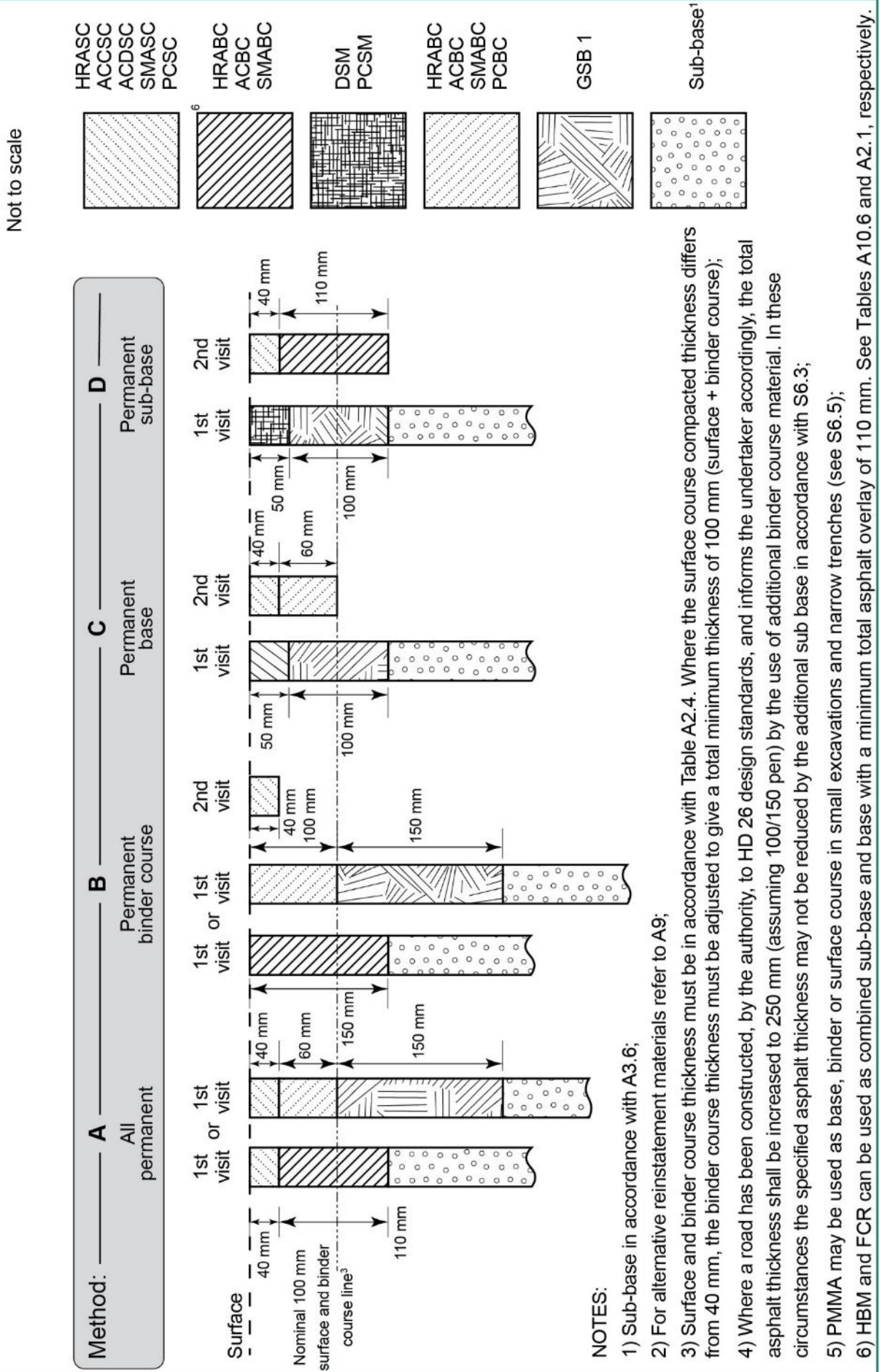
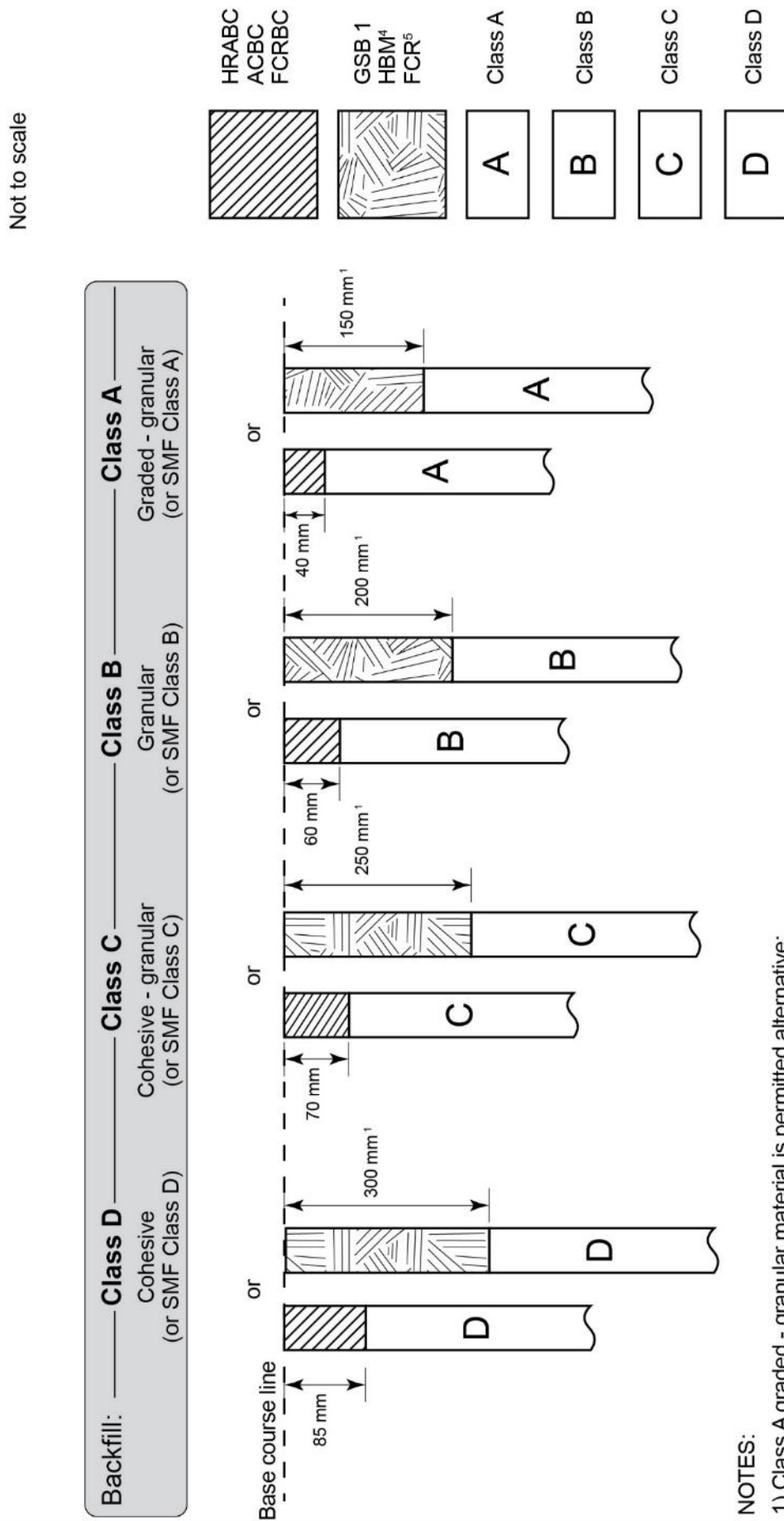


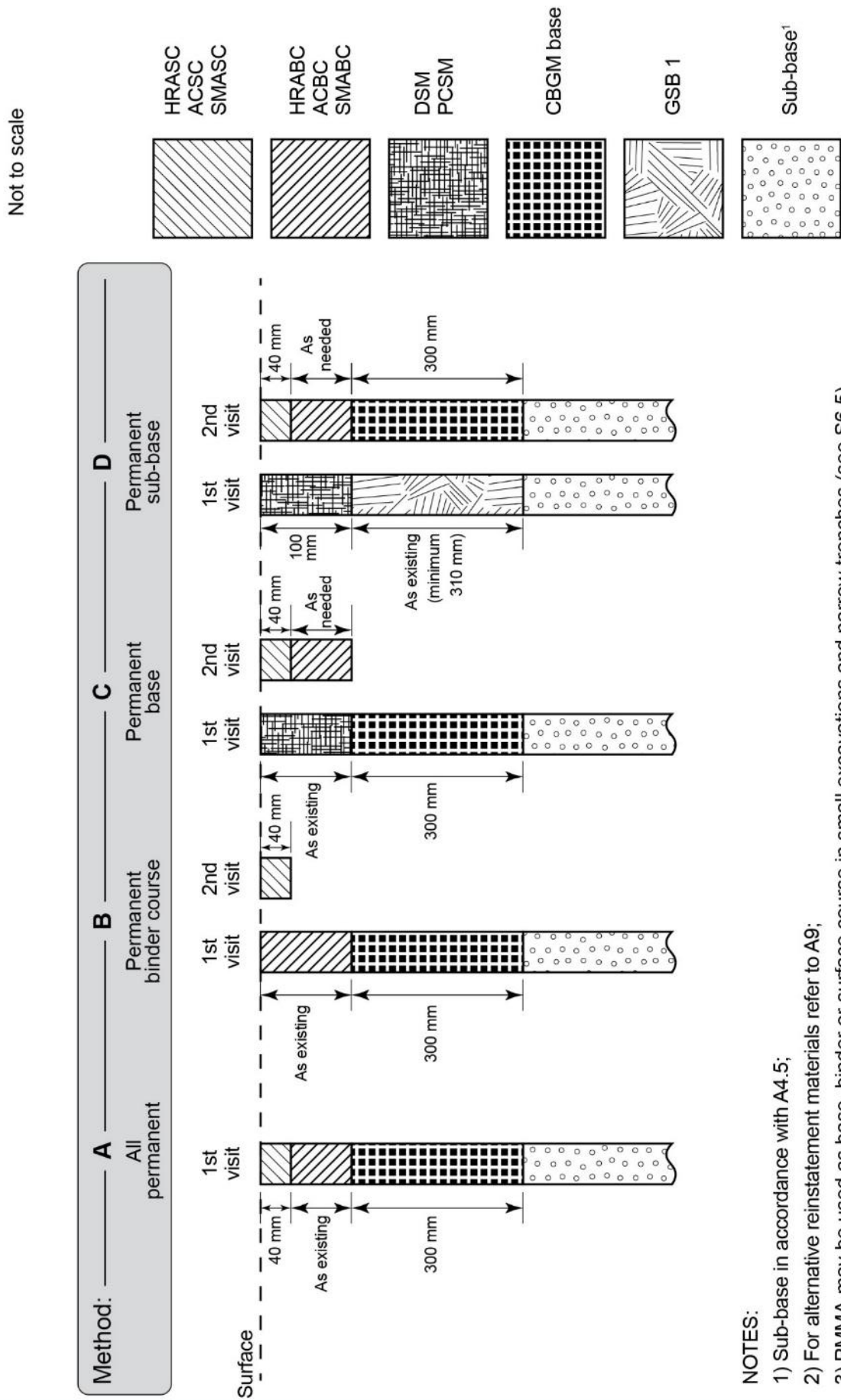
Figure A3.6 Sub-base construction for flexible roads



NOTES:

- 1) Class A graded - granular material is permitted alternative;
- 2) In addition to SMF classes A to D, for other alternative reinstatement materials refer to A9;
- 3) PMMA may be used as sub-base in small excavations and narrow trenches (see S6.5);
- 4) See Table A10.6;
- 5) See Table A2.1.

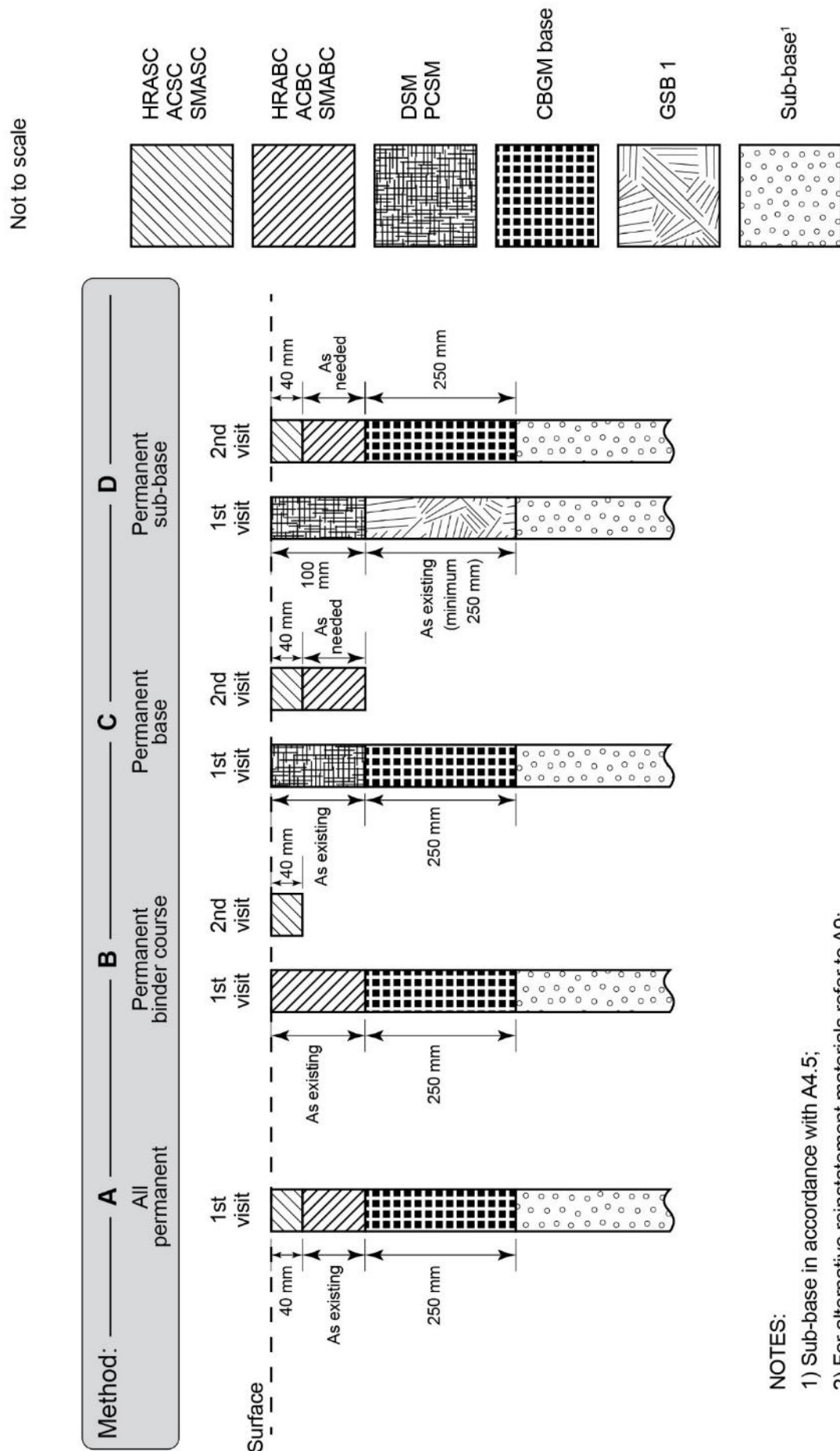
Figure A4.1 Composite roads type 0



NOTES:

- 1) Sub-base in accordance with A4.5;
- 2) For alternative reinstatement materials refer to A9;
- 3) PMMA may be used as base, binder or surface course in small excavations and narrow trenches (see S6.5).

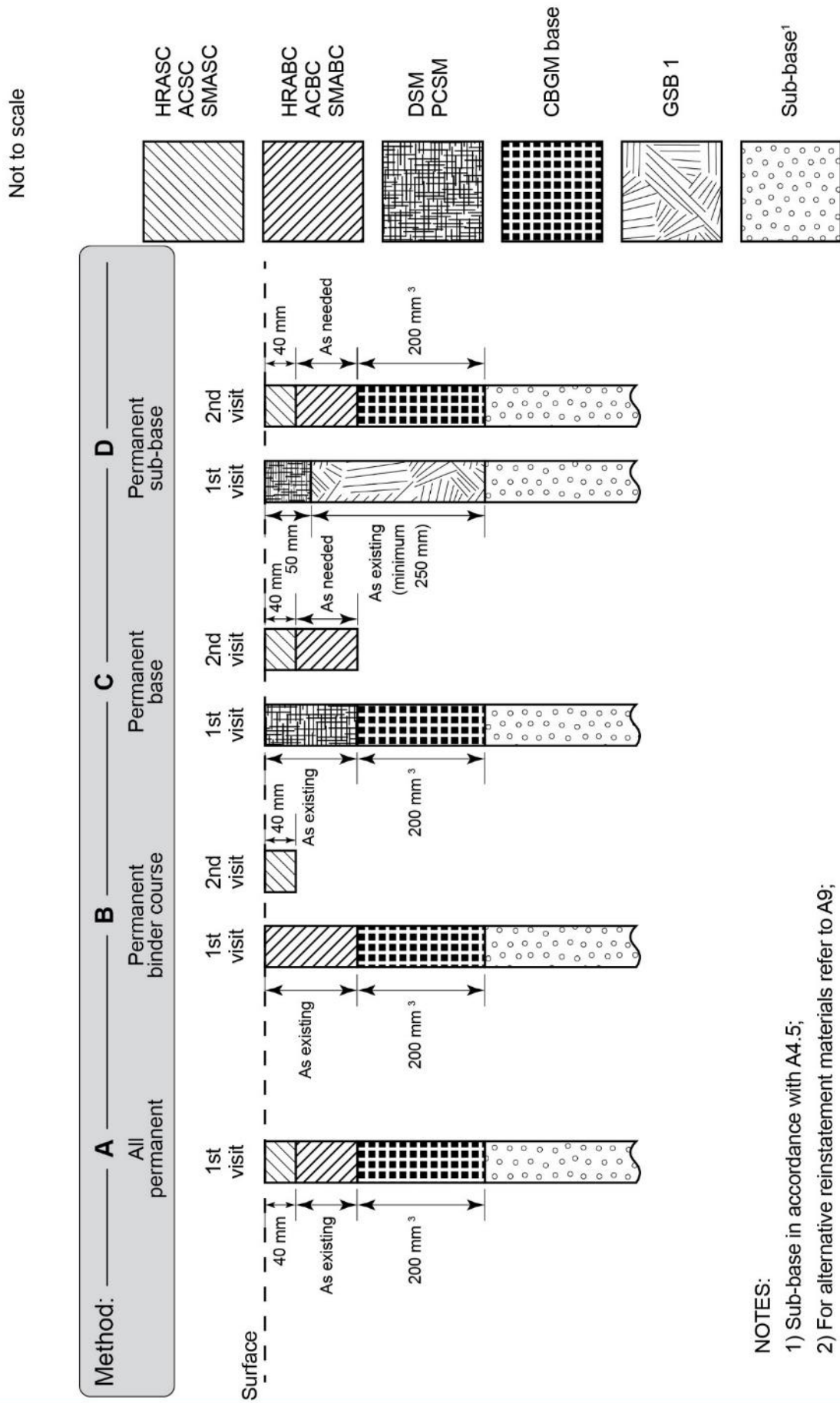
Figure A4.2 Composite roads type 1



NOTES:

- 1) Sub-base in accordance with A4.5;
- 2) For alternative reinstatement materials refer to A9;
- 3) PMMA may be used as base, binder or surface course in small excavations and narrow trenches (see S6.5).

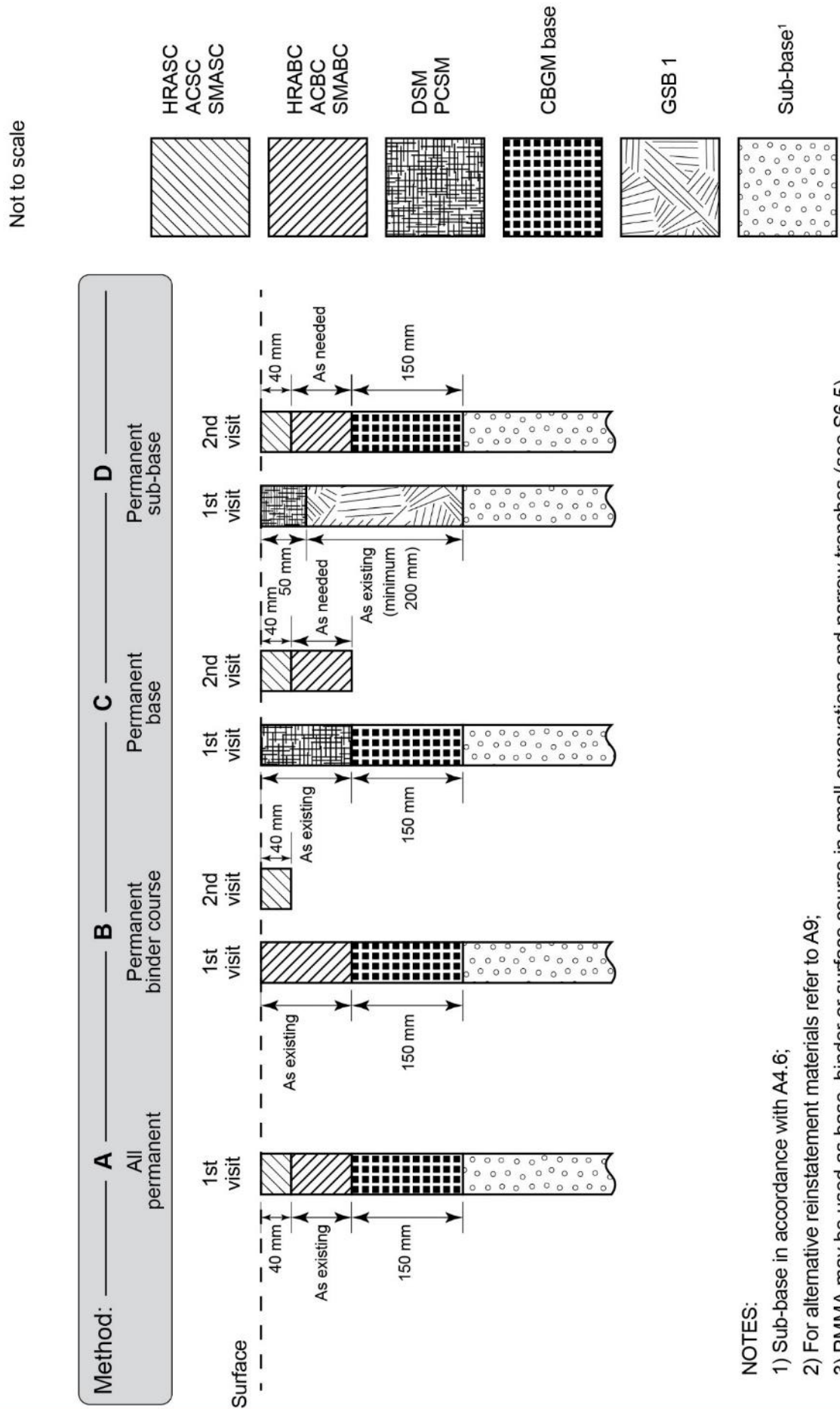
Figure A4.3 Composite roads type 2



NOTES:

- 1) Sub-base in accordance with A4.5;
- 2) For alternative reinstatement materials refer to A9;
- 3) Roadbase to be 250 mm thick if existing exceeds 200 mm;
- 4) PMMA may be used as base, binder or surface course in small excavations and narrow trenches (see S6.5).

Figure A4.4 Composite roads types 3 and 4

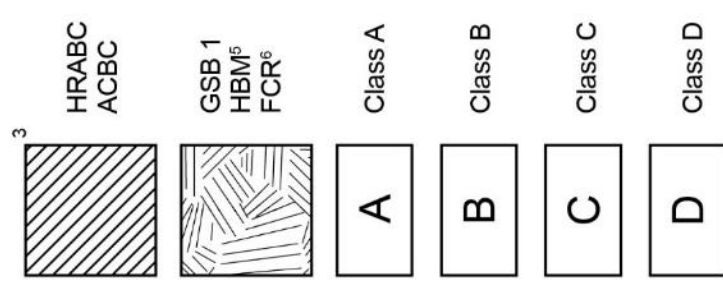
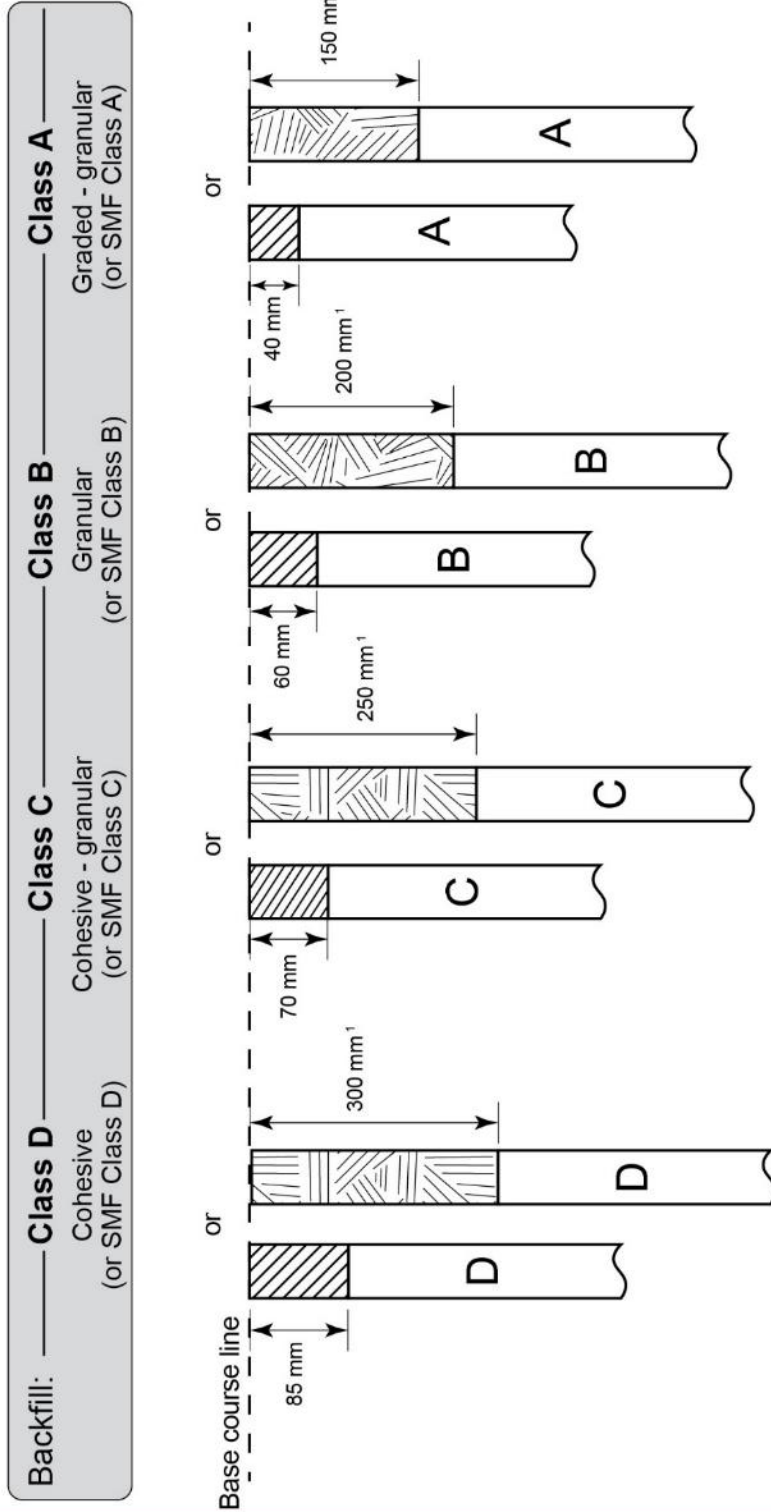


NOTES:

- 1) Sub-base in accordance with A4.6;
- 2) For alternative reinstatement materials refer to A9;
- 3) PMMA may be used as base, binder or surface course in small excavations and narrow trenches (see S6.5).

Figure A4.5 Sub-base construction for composite roads - types 0, 1 and 2

Not to scale

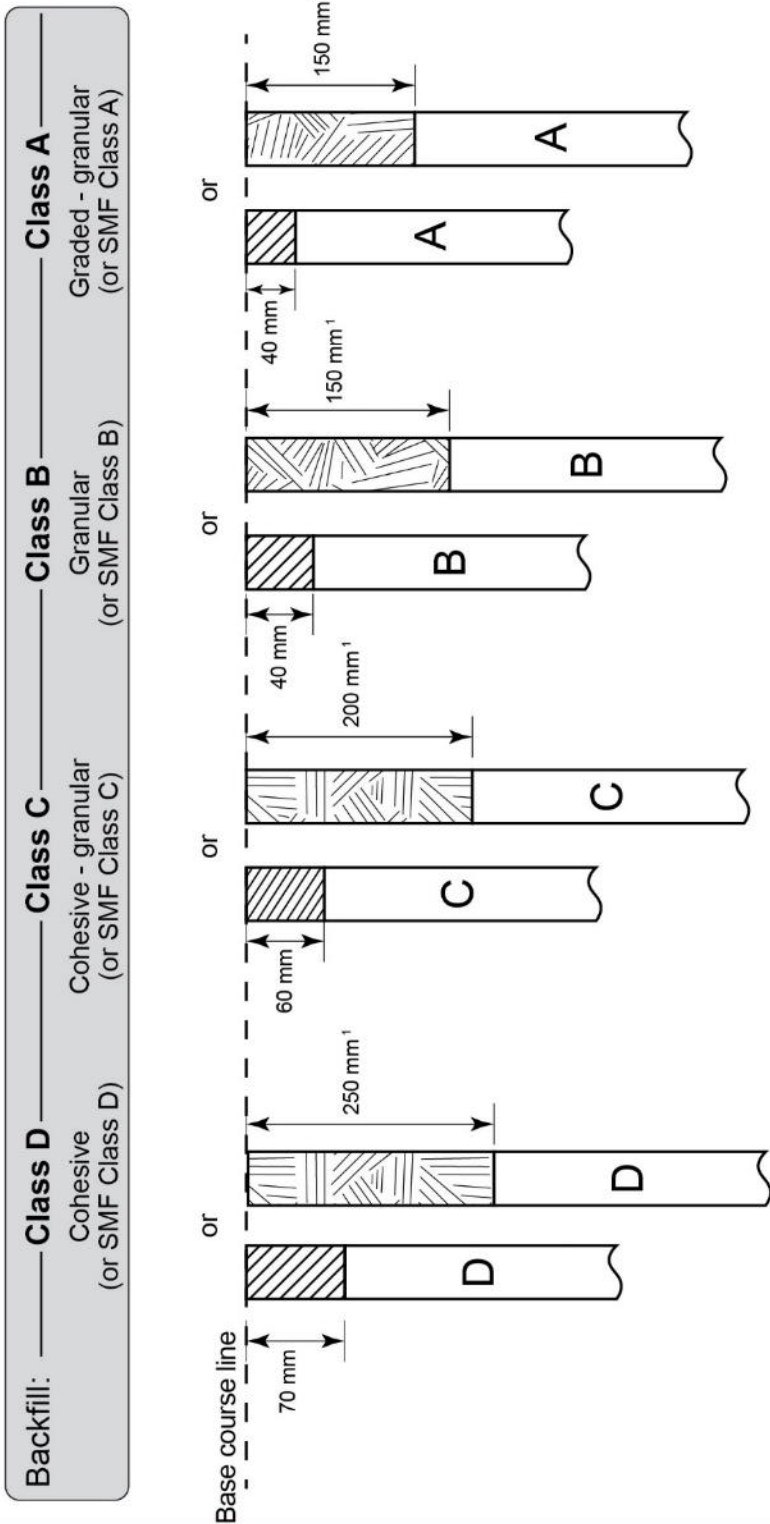


NOTES:

- 1) Class A graded - granular material is permitted alternative;
- 2) In addition to SMF classes A to D, for other alternative reinstatement materials refer to A9;
- 3) PMMA may be used as sub-base in small excavations and narrow trenches (see S6.5);
- 4) In small openings and narrow trenches CBGM base may be used as sub-base. Thickness must be 150 mm and the base must be bound;
- 5) See Table A10.6;
- 6) See Table A2.1.

Figure A4.6 Sub-base construction for composite roads - types 3 and 4

Not to scale

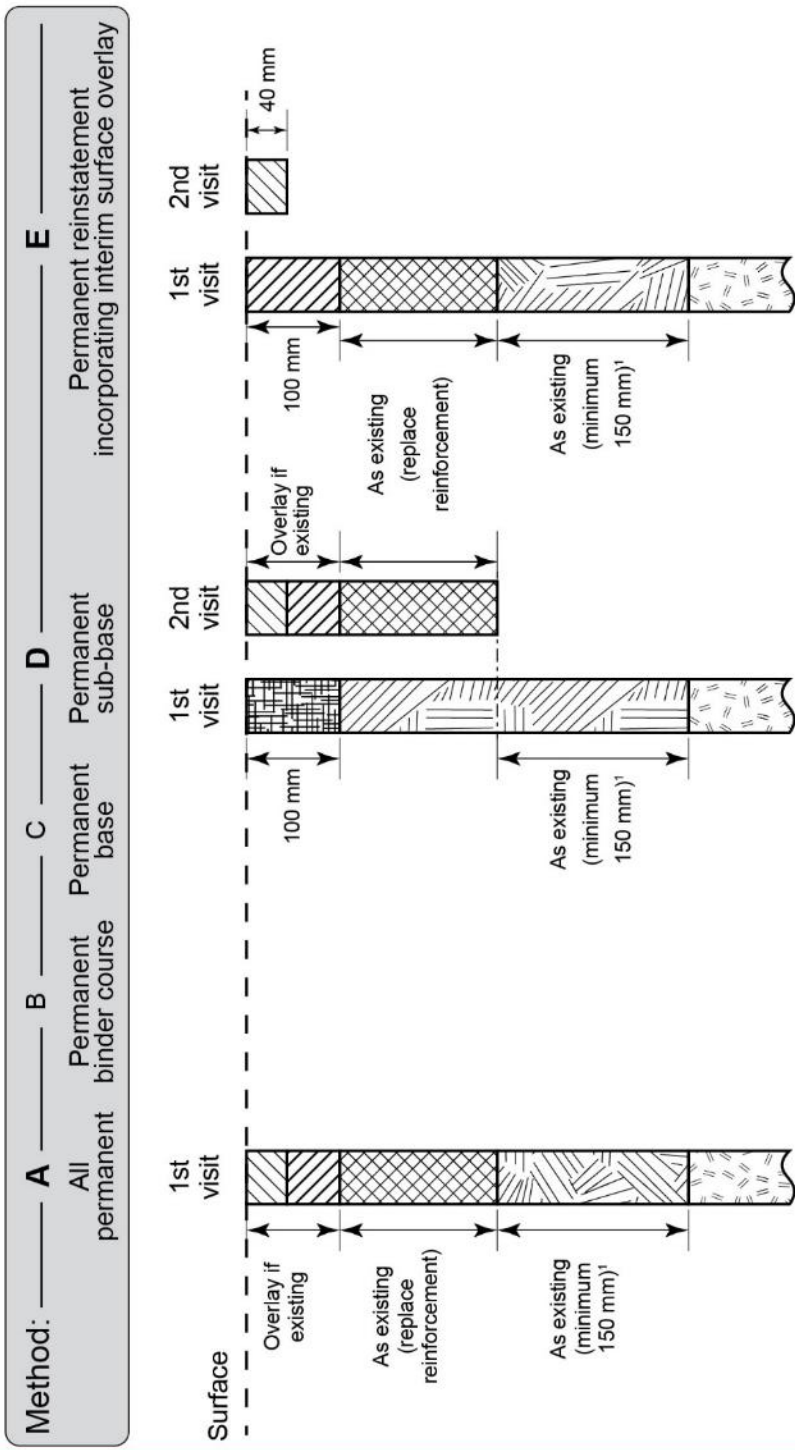


NOTES:

- 1) Class A graded - granular material is permitted alternative;
- 2) In addition to SMF classes A to D, for other alternative reinstatement materials refer to A9;
- 3) PMMA may be used as sub-base in small excavations and narrow trenches (see S6.5);
- 4) In small openings and narrow trenches CBGM base may be used as sub-base. Thickness must be 150 mm and the base must be bound;
- 5) See Table A10.6;
- 6) See Table A2.1.

Figure A5.1 Rigid roads type 0

Not to scale

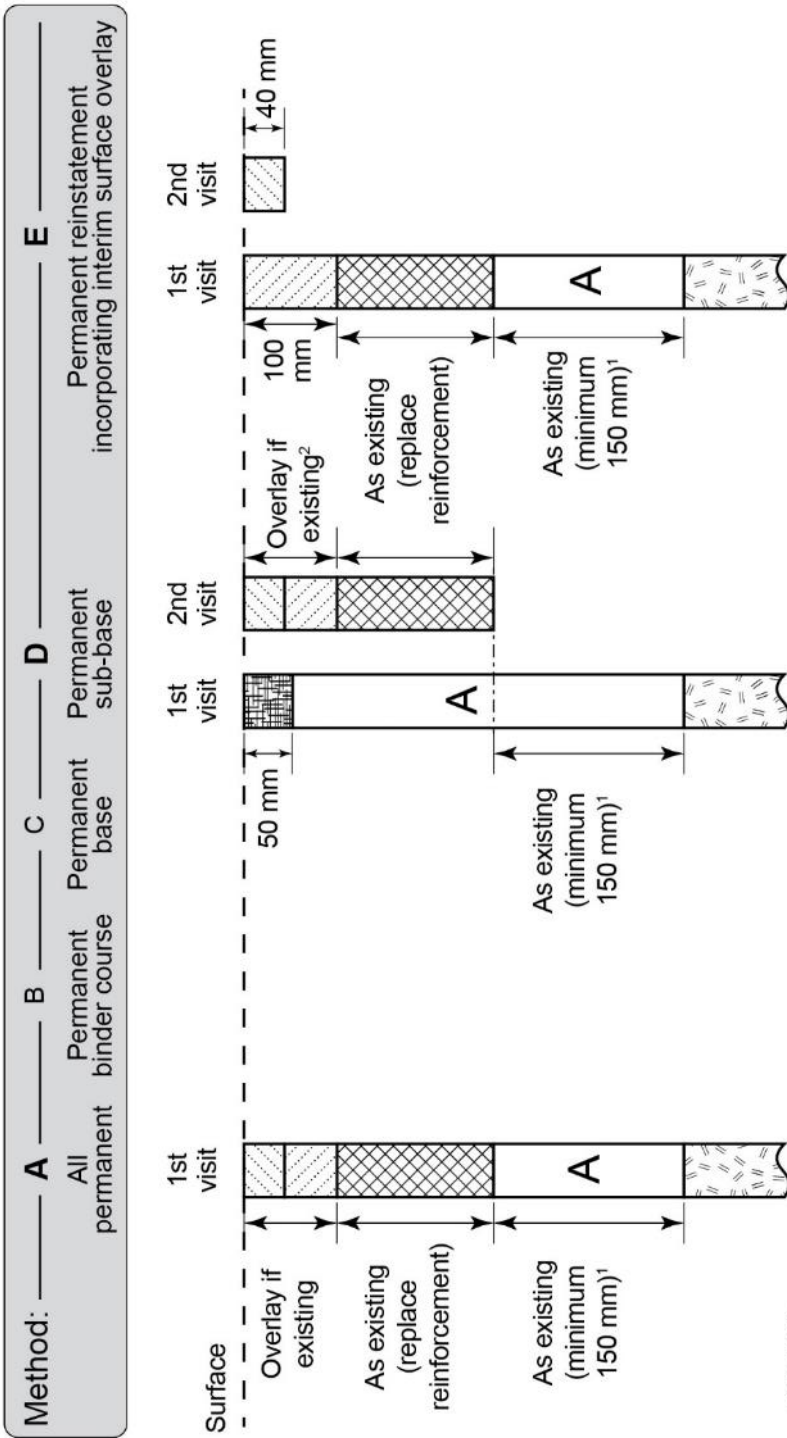


NOTES:

- 1) If existing sub-base is bound, replace with CBGM base;
- 2) For alternative reinstatement materials refer to A9;
- 3) Method E – permanent reinstatement incorporating interim surface overlay is only a reinstatement method option for rigid roads;
- 4) In small openings and narrow trenches CBGM base may be used as sub-base. Thickness must be 150 mm and the base must be bound.

Figure A5.3 Rigid roads types 2, 3 and 4

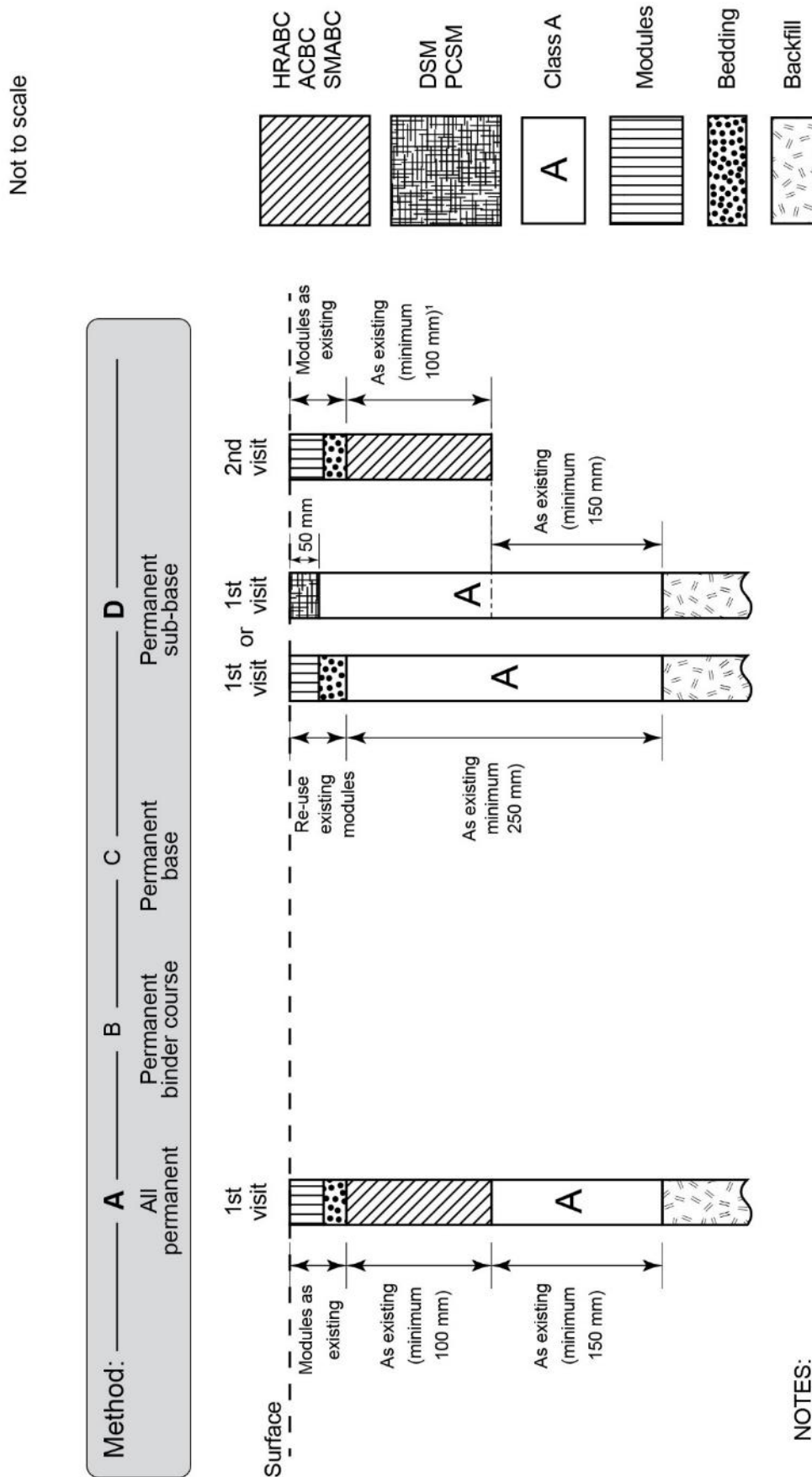
Not to scale



NOTES:

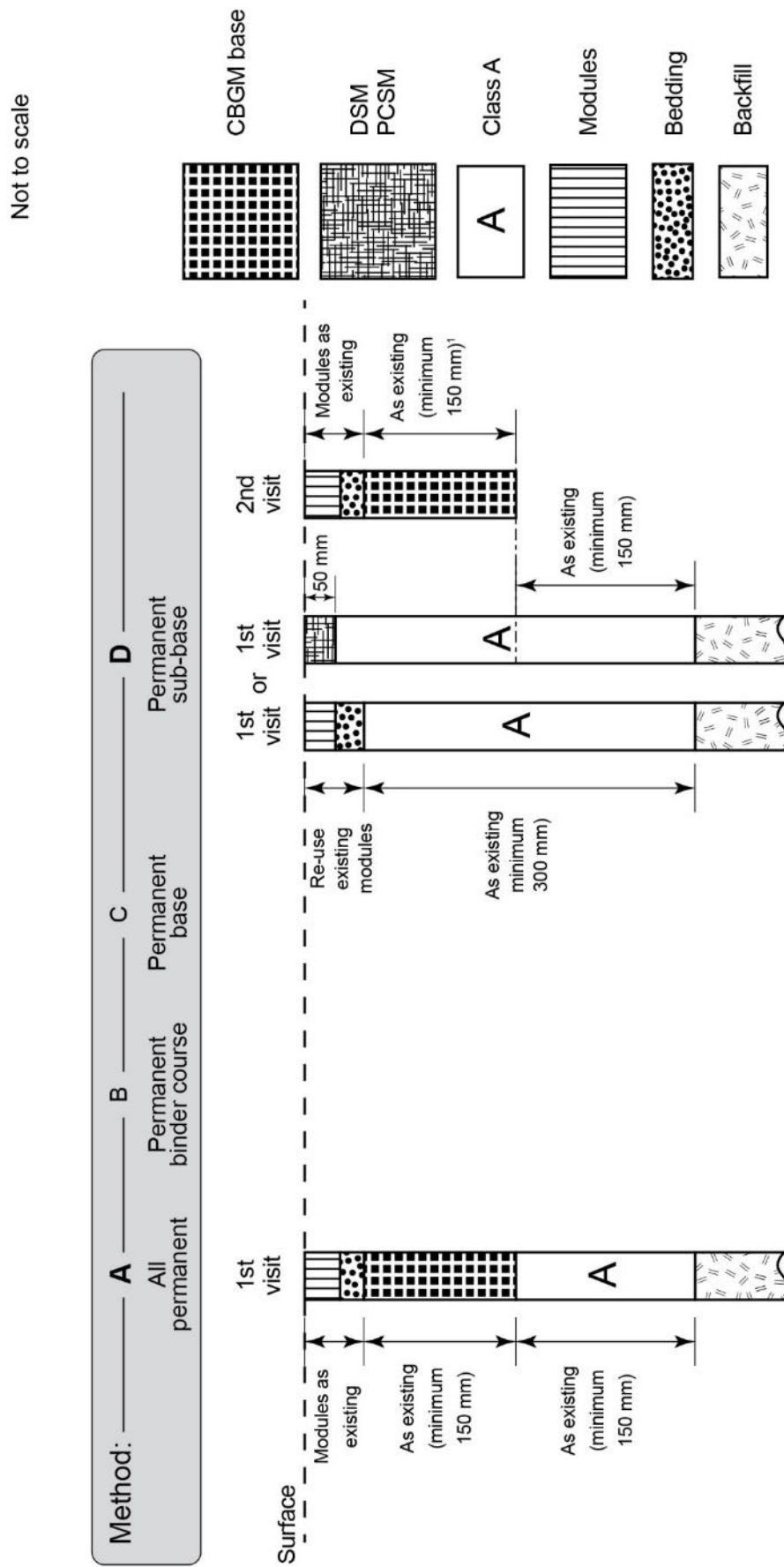
- 1) If existing sub-base is bound, replace with CBGM base;
- 2) PCSC and PCBC not permitted in type 2 roads;
- 3) For alternative reinstatement materials refer to A9;
- 4) Method E – permanent reinstatement incorporating interim surface overlay is only a reinstatement method option for rigid roads;
- 5) In small openings and narrow trenches CBGM base may be used as sub-base. Thickness must be 150 mm and the base must be bound.

Figure A6.1 Modular roads (bituminous base) types 3 and 4



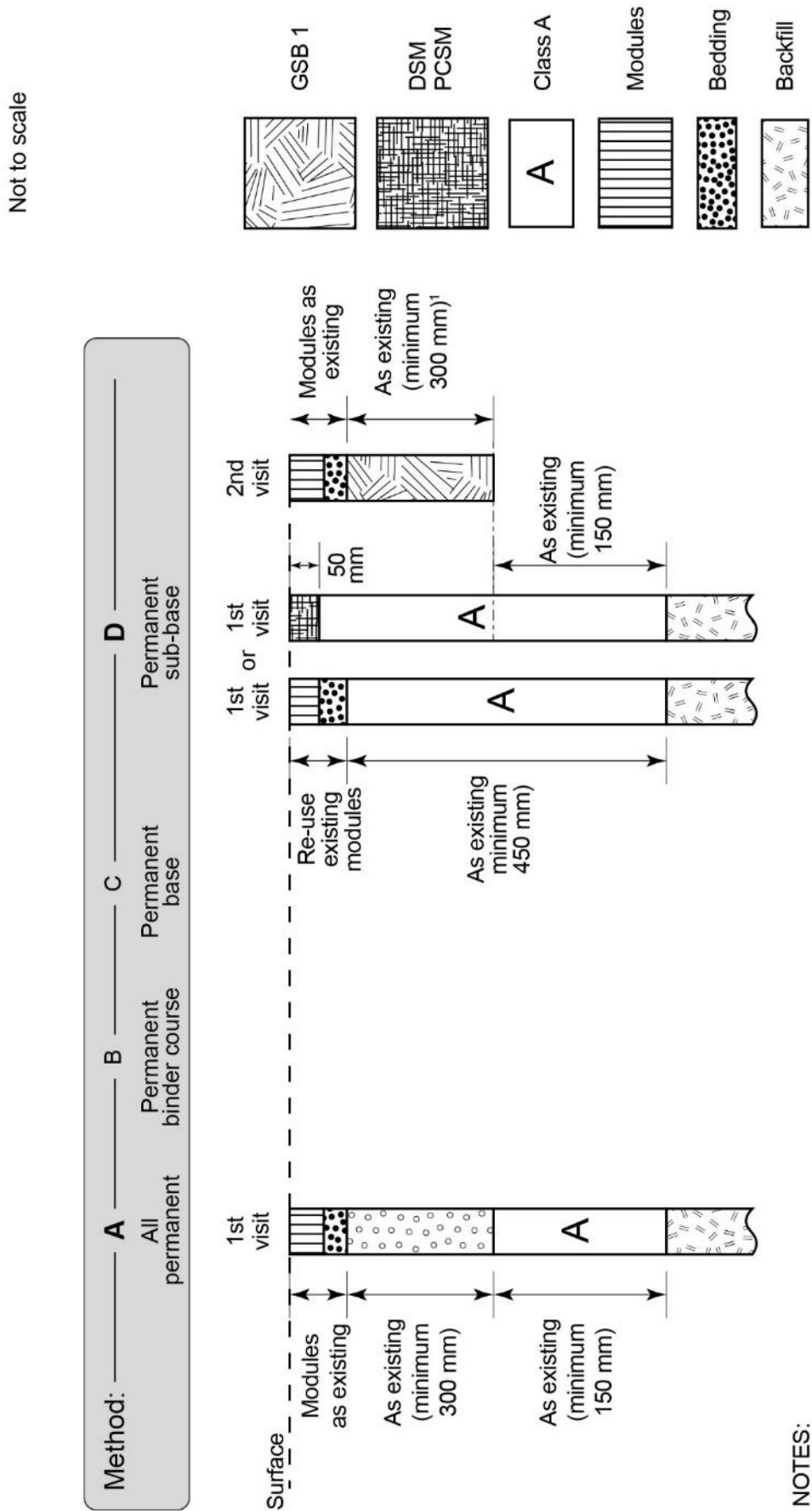
- NOTES:**
- 1) May be permanently reinstated on the first visit;
 - 2) For alternative reinstatement materials refer to A9;
 - 3) PPMA may be used as base in small excavations and narrow trenches (see S6.5) ;
 - 4) In small openings and narrow trenches CBGM base may be used as sub-base. Thickness must be 150 mm and the base must be bound.

Figure A6.2 Modular roads (composite base) types 3 and 4



- NOTES:**
- 1) May be permanently reinstated on the first visit;
 - 2) For alternative reinstatement materials refer to A9;
 - 3) In small openings and narrow trenches CBGM base may be used as sub-base. Thickness must be 150 mm and the base must be bound.

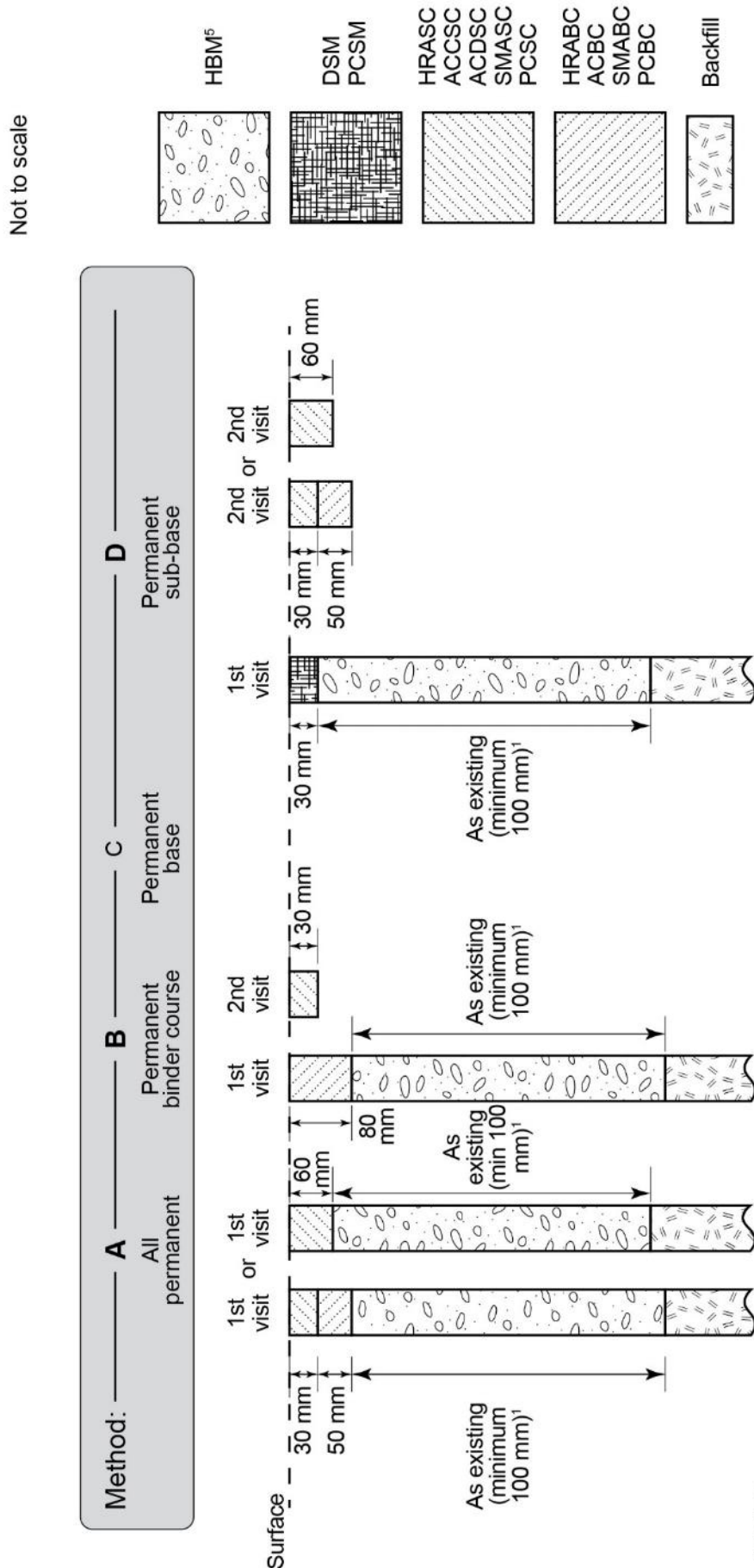
Figure A6.3 Modular roads (granular base) types 3 and 4



NOTES:

- 1) May be permanently reinstated on the first visit;
- 2) For alternative reinstatement materials refer to A9;
- 3) In small openings and narrow trenches CBGM base may be used as sub-base. Thickness must be 150 mm and the base must be bound.

Figure A7.2 Composite footways, footpaths and cycle tracks

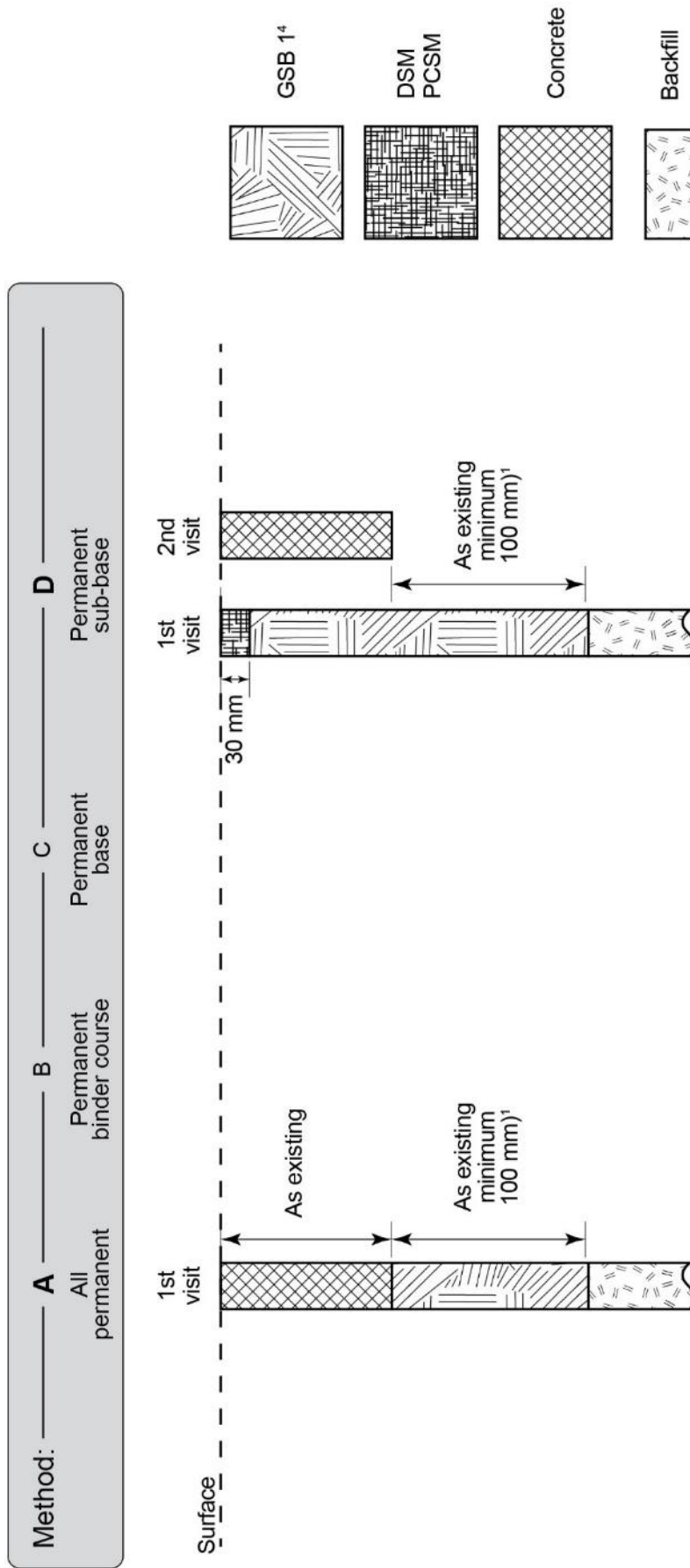


NOTES:

- 1) Class A graded granular is a permitted alternative;
- 2) For alternative reinstatement materials refer to A9;
- 3) PMMA may be used as sub-base, binder or surface course in small excavations and narrow trenches (see S6.5);
- 4) In small openings and narrow trenches the sub-base can also be a HBM of 150 mm minimum thickness, a 50/20 HRABC or 20 mm DBC of 40 mm thickness or 3 layers of 15/10 HRA SC, 6 mm DCS or 6 mm SMA laid to a total thickness of 100 mm as combined sub-base, binder course and surface course;
- 5) See Table A10.6. FCR may be used in accordance with Table A2.1.

Figure A7.3 Rigid footways, footpaths and cycle tracks

Not to scale

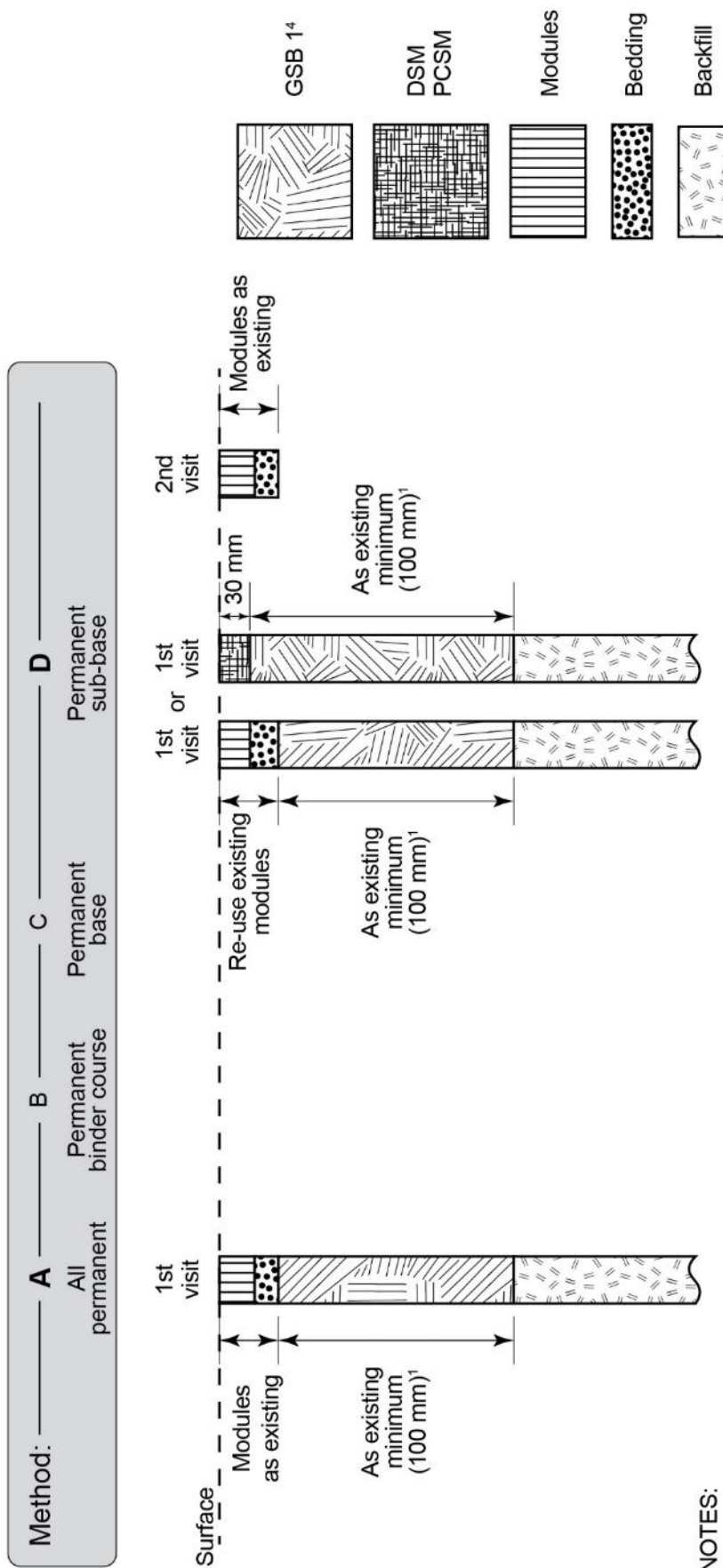


NOTES:

- 1) Class A graded granular is a permitted alternative;
- 2) For alternative reinstatement materials refer to A9;
- 3) In small openings and narrow trenches the sub-base can also be a HBM of 150 mm minimum thickness, a 50/20 HRABC or 20 mm DBC of 40 mm thickness or 3 layers of 15/10 HRA SC, 6 mm DCS or 6 mm SMA laid to a total thickness of 100 mm as combined sub-base, binder course and surface course;
- 4) HBM and FCR may be used in accordance with Table A10.6 and A2.1 respectively.

Figure A7.4 Modular footways, footpaths and cycle tracks

Not to scale



NOTES:

- 1) Class A graded granular is a permitted alternative;
- 2) For alternative reinstatement materials refer to A9;
- 3) In small openings and narrow trenches the sub-base can also be a HBM of 150 mm minimum thickness, a 50/20 HRABC or 20 mm DBC of 40 mm thickness or 3 layers of 15/10 HRA SC, 6 mm DCS or 6 mm SMA laid to a total thickness of 100 mm as combined sub-base, binder course and surface course;
- 4) HBM and FCR may be used in accordance with Table A10.6 and A2.1 respectively.

Appendix A8

Compaction requirements

A8.1 Granular, cohesive and cement bound materials

A8.1.1 All granular, graded granular, cohesive/granular, cohesive and cement bound materials laid above the surround to apparatus must be compacted in accordance with Table A8.1.

Table A8.1 Compaction requirements for granular, cohesive and cement bound materials

Compaction plant and weight category	Cohesive material (less than 20% granular content)			Granular material (20% or more granular content including cement bound material)		
	Minimum passes/lift for compacted lift thickness up to			Minimum passes/lift for compacted lift thickness up to		
	100 mm	150 mm	200 mm	100 mm	150 mm	200 mm
Vibrotamper 50 kg minimum	4	8#	NP	4	8	NP
Vibrating roller Single drum 600-1000 kg/m 1000-2000 kg/m 2000-3500 kg/m Over 3500 kg/m	NP 8 3 3	NP NP 6 4	NP NP NP 6#	12 6 3 3	NP NP 5 4	NP NP 7 6
Twin drum 600-1000 kg/m 1000-2000 kg/m Over 2000 kg/m	NP 4 2	NP 8 3	NP NP 5#	6 3 2	NP 6 3	NP NP 4
Vibrating plate 1400-1800 kg/m ² Over 1800 kg/m ²	NP 3	NP 6	NP NP	5 3	NP 5	NP 7
All above plant	For maximum and minimum compacted lift thickness see Table A2.5					
Compaction of small excavations and narrow trenches must comply with S6.5						
Vibrotamper 25 kg minimum	Minimum of 6 compaction passes of 100 mm compacted lift thickness					Maximum
Percussive rammer 10 kg minimum						
Notes for Table A8.1: 1) NP = Not Permitted 2) # = Not Permitted on wholly cohesive material i.e. clay and/or silt with no particles > 0.063 mm 3) Single drum vibrating rollers are vibrating rollers providing vibration on only one drum 4) Twin drum vibrating rollers are vibrating rollers providing vibration on two separate drums 5) HBMs must be compacted in accordance with A10.2						

A8.2

Chalk materials

A8.2.1

All chalk materials, including medium and high-density chawks must be compacted in accordance with Table A8.2. However, if the chalk is unstable after compaction, it must be removed and replaced with fresh material. Fresh chalk must be compacted in accordance with Table A8.2 except that the specified number of compaction passes must be reduced by one pass. If the chalk is still unstable after compaction, it must be deemed to be unsuitable for use as backfill and replaced with suitable material.

Table A8.2 Compaction requirements for chalk materials			
Compaction plant and weight category	Chalk material		
	Minimum passes/lift for compacted lift thickness up to		
	100 mm	150 mm	200 mm
Vibrotamper 50 kg minimum	3	6	NP
Vibrating roller Single drum 600-1000 kg/m 1000-2000 kg/m 2000-3500 kg/m Over 3500 kg/m	12 6 NP NP	NP 8 4 NP	NP NP 6 4
Twin drum 600-1000 kg/m 1000-2000 kg/m Over 2000 kg/m	6 2 NP	8 4 3	NP 6 4
Vibrating plate 1400-1800 kg/m ² Over 1800 kg/m ²	6 NP	8 6	NP 8
Alternative compaction plant for areas of restricted access (including small excavations and trenches less than 200 mm width)			
Vibrotamper 25 kg minimum	Minimum of 6 compaction passes Maximum of 100 mm compacted lift thickness		
Percussive rammer 10 kg minimum			
Notes for Table A8.2: 1) NP = Not Permitted 2) Single drum vibrating rollers are vibrating rollers providing vibration on only one drum 3) Twin drum vibrating rollers are vibrating rollers providing vibration on two separate drums			

A8.3 Bituminous mixtures

A8.3.1 Bituminous mixtures for permanent reinstatements permitted in A2 must be compacted to the in-situ air void requirements of S10.2.8. Guidance on compaction procedures that may be capable of achieving the specified air voids values is given in NG A8.

A8.3.2 Compaction should be discontinued if the mixture shows any signs of distress, regardless of whether the minimum number of passes suggested in NG A8 have been applied.

A8.3.3 Compacted materials must be capable of being wet flush cored as follows:

- 1) hot materials – upon reaching ambient temperature;
- 2) PCSMs – at 6 months from the date of the permanent reinstatement.

Appendix A9

Alternative reinstatement materials (ARMs) and alternative technologies (ATs)

A9.1 Introduction

A9.1.1 New or alternative materials and technologies may be developed for use in street works. ARMs and ATs might be used to improve safety or reduce disruption, cost, noise or other environmental impacts.

A9.1.2 There are three groups of ARMs:

- 1) Structural materials for reinstatements (SMRs, see A9.1.3)
- 2) Treated materials for fills (TMFs, see A9.1.4 and A9.15)
- 3) Other types of ARM, for example bituminous bound products (e.g. asphalt surfacing) that do not fit within the classification or application within A9.1. These can be used if they meet the performance requirements of this Code, are supported by a Quality System (A9.2 paragraphs 1 to 3) and are approved via A9 trials (see A9.5).

A9.1.3 SMRs include proprietary or alternative bound reinstatement materials that have a bituminous, cementitious, chemical or hydraulic binder or are inherently self-cementing. SMRs are categorised as follows:

a) Flowable SMRs (FSMRs)

PMMA complying with A2.5 and FCR complying with A2.5. are not FSMRs and are not required to comply with A9.

With the above exceptions, FSMRs comprise any type and/or combination of aggregates and binders that are flowable and do not normally require compaction.

FSMRs may be used by agreement with the Highway Authority following the procedure detailed in A9.5.

Layer thickness and compressive strength requirements must be in accordance with Table A9.1.

b) Non-flowable SMRs (NFSMRs)

HBMs complying with A2.5.2 and A10.2 are not NFSMRs and are not required to comply with A9.

With the above exceptions, NFSMRs comprise any type and/or combination of aggregates, soils and binders that are non-flowable mixes, and they normally require compaction on site. These

materials may be used by agreement with the Authority following the procedure detailed in A9.5.

Layer thickness and compressive strength requirements must be in accordance with Table A9.1.

Table A9.1 SMR minimum layer thickness and compressive strength requirements

Layer	Road type					Footway, footpath or cycle track
	0	1	2	3	4	
Combined binder course & sub-base	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	150 mm C 1.5/2
Base	NP	NP	NP	300 mm C 1.5/2	200 mm C 1.5/2	---
Base & sub-base	NP	450 mm C3/4	450 mm C3/4	450 mm C 1.5/2	350 mm C 1.5/2	---
Sub-base &/or below	150 mm C 1.5/2	150 mm C 1.5/2	150 mm C 1.5/2	150 mm C 1.5/2	150 mm C 1.5/2	100 mm C 1.5/2
Crushing strength at 28 days	C3/4 minimum to C9/12 maximum C 1.5/2 minimum to C9/12 maximum					
Note to Table A9.1: NP = Not Permitted (see A9.3.1)						

A9.1.4 TMFs comprise any type and/or combination of aggregates, soils and binders that are non-flowable mixes and they normally require compaction on site. These materials may be used by agreement with the authority following the procedure detailed in A9.5.

A9.1.5 CBR requirements must be in accordance with Table A9.2.

Table A9.2 TMF CBR requirements

SMF class	% CBR
A	>15
B	7 to 15
C	4 to 7
D	2 to 4

A9.1.6 New technologies, methods or techniques are termed alternative techniques (ATs) and may be used by agreement with the authority following the procedure detailed in A9.5. These include alternative excavation, compaction and any other alternative technology relevant to this Code.

A9.2 General requirements for ARMs and ATs

- A9.2.1 ARMs and ATs may only be used with the agreement of the authority obtained in accordance with the approval process described in A9.5.
- A9.2.2 The producer must maintain a Quality System that includes policy and procedures for production control. ARMs must be produced, handled, transported and used in accordance with the approved mix formulations and procedures proven by prior development and testing. ATs must be used in accordance with the procedures established by prior development and testing.
- A9.2.3 The authority must be notified of any alterations to the proven mix formulations, mix proportions, aggregate type, admixtures, procedures, etc. Confirmation of their suitability must be agreed, and further development and testing may be needed.
- A9.2.4 ARMs used within 450 mm of the road surface must be non-frost susceptible subject to the exceptions referred to in S5.3.1.
- A9.2.5 Where the authority is aware of areas with drainage or groundwater problems, it should notify the undertaker. Following such notification, the undertaker must provide ARMs that are permeable to a degree not less than the surrounding ground at backfill and sub-base levels within trench reinstatement. A backfill layer of pea gravel of 100 mm minimum thickness and surrounded by a geotextile filter fabric (where appropriate) may be considered to offer equivalent drainage potential.
- A9.2.6 Surfacing materials must not be reinstated until the ARM has attained sufficient strength or has an immediate bearing index sufficient to allow adequate compaction of overlaying materials and sustain adequate traffic loading.
- A9.2.7 FSMRs can flow into any damaged drains or ducts nearby. Where required, plastic sheeting may be needed to provide protection during pouring.

A9.3 Structural materials for reinstatements (SMRs)

Permitted uses of SMRs

- A9.3.1 Regardless of the nature of the reinstatement materials used in the layers above or below, SMRs may be used as follows, and in any combination thereof:
- 1) At any position within the surround to apparatus and/or backfill, as the entire layer or combined with any other permitted backfill materials, in any proportion, within any reinstatement.
 - 2) As a sub-base within any reinstatement.
 - 3) As a combined sub-base and base within any reinstatement in road Types 1, 2, 3 & 4 and as base within any reinstatement in road Types 3 & 4.
 - 4) As a combined sub-base and binder course, within any reinstatement in footways, footpaths and cycle tracks.

- 5) SMRs can only be used in an application that is listed in A9.3.1 paragraph 1.

General requirements for SMRs

- A9.3.2 SMRs must comply with the minimum layer thickness and compressive strength (Rc Class) requirements shown in Table A9.1.
- A9.3.3 Where the total thickness of SMR exceeds 1000 mm, the minimum crushing strength requirement of C3/4 must apply to the top 1000 mm with a minimum of C1.5/2 below this depth.
- A9.3.4 The test must be carried out by a UKAS (or equivalent) accredited laboratory unless agreed otherwise.

Requirements for FSMRs

- A9.3.5 Compressive strength must be determined in accordance with the principles of BS EN 12390-3, with the following exceptions or options:
- 1) Test specimens may be prepared at the time of placement by casting within a test mould or recovered from site after placement by the extraction of cores from the reinstatement.
 - 2) Specimen shape and dimensions must be in accordance with BS EN 12390-1 with the addition that specimens may also be manufactured with an aspect ratio of 1. FSMR moulds may be manufactured from cellular foam (preferably polystyrene) and include a cellular foam lid. The samples must not be compacted, except for minimal tamping to allow the mould to be filled without leaving excessive areas of voids.
 - 3) The top and bottom surfaces of the extracted core may be grouted to provide a flat and parallel loading surfaces.
 - 4) Following preparation or recovery, the test samples must be stored upright at either 20°C or 40°C, depending on the nature of the material, and tested in compression at 28 days after placement of the material on site.
- A9.3.6 FSMRs must achieve the required performance without being tamped or compacted.
- A9.3.7 In excavations containing water, the minimum recommended density for FSMRs is 1050 kg/m³.
- A9.3.8 FSMRs are unlikely to provide adequate load bearing capacity for several hours after placement, depending on several variables including temperature and set time of the mix.

Requirements for NFSMRs

- A9.3.9 NFSMRs
- 1) The compressive strength of NFSMRs must be determined in accordance with the principles of BS 1924 Part 2 Section 7.3. Curing must be in accordance with BS 1924- 2 section 7.2.4. Specifically, cores must be sealed or immersed in water at 20°C or 40°C for 28 days.

Alternative sample manufacture techniques (including the use of cylinders or recovered cores of hardened specimens) may be adopted if they demonstrate equivalence to the above procedure.

- 2) NFSMRs may require compaction to ensure adequate strength. The compaction regime (i.e. details of plant type, weight category, lift/layer thickness and number of passes) must be specified before an NFSMR is used, and it should be determined by development and testing.

SMR material production

A9.3.10 FSMRs and NFSMRs must be prepared in accordance with an agreed process or with the procedures set out in the approval trial agreement (see A9.5), and to the approved mix formulation(s) (derived from documented testing and compaction trials).

A9.3.11 FSMRs and NFSMRs may be delivered to site as ready-made materials or prepared partly or wholly on site.

A9.3.12 Mixing may be carried out using any equipment suitable for the manufacture of FSMRs and NFSMRs in the required quantities, provided the approved mixing procedure is used throughout. Mixing equipment must be maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and checked regularly. All metering or weighing apparatus must be calibrated regularly according to a Quality Assurance Scheme.

A9.3.13 All binders, additives and admixtures, including diluted solutions thereof, must be stored according to the manufacturer's recommendations and used within the recommended shelf life.

A9.3.14 NFSMRs must be compacted in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations or to an agreed compaction regime derived from development and testing.

A9.4 Treated materials for fills (TMFs)

Permitted use of TMFs

A9.4.1 TMFs may be used in place of other materials on a trial basis by agreement with the authority. They can be used in the layers appropriate to their CBR classification as defined by Table A9.2, and regardless of the nature of reinstatement materials used above and below, in any combination of the following:

- 1) At any position within the surround to apparatus and/or backfill, as the entire layer or combined with any other permitted backfill materials, in any proportion, within any reinstatement.
- 2) As a combined surround to apparatus and/or backfill within any reinstatement.
- 3) If classified as a TMF Class A material as per Table A9.2, it may also be used in the sub-base layer within any road, footway, footpath or cycle track.

A9.4.2 TMFs cannot be used in any application not listed above in A9.4.1 paragraph 1.

Overall requirements for TMFs

- A9.4.3 Each stabilisation or modification method and formulation must be classified with an equivalent to one of the four defined classes of backfill material permitted in A1, as follows:
- 1) Class A TMF Material – equivalent to Class A Graded Granular Backfill Material,
 - or
 - 2) B TMF Material – equivalent to Class B Granular Backfill Material,
 - or
 - 3) Class C TMF Material – equivalent to Class C Cohesive/Granular Backfill Material,
 - or
 - 4) Class D TMF Material – equivalent to Class D Cohesive Backfill Material.

A9.4.4 The TMF material classification must be based on the soaked %CBR or equivalent value proven during the development and laboratory testing, in accordance with Table A9.2.

A9.4.5 The CBR value must be determined by laboratory testing in accordance with the principles of BS1377 (soil) or BS1924 Parts 1 and 2 (material with hydraulic binder), with the following requirements:

- 1) Conventional steel test moulds may be unsuitable for some TMF materials (owing to the requirement to remove coarse aggregate >20 mm in size) and in-situ testing may therefore need to be considered. The preparation of TMF test samples may include test cores extracted from site.
- 2) Following preparation, the test samples are stored at ambient temperature for up to 90 days after the placement of the material on site.
- 3) The laboratory CBR test is performed on samples in a soaked condition (soaked for 4 days prior to testing).
- 4) The tests are carried out by a UKAS accredited laboratory unless mutually agreed otherwise.
- 5) On site, a recognised appropriate direct or indirect equivalent test method may be used.

TMF production

A9.4.6 TMFs must be prepared in accordance with an agreed process or with the procedures set out in the approval trial agreement (see A9.5), and to the approved mix formulation(s) derived from development and testing.

A9.4.7 TMFs can be prepared on site or delivered to site as a ready-mixed fill material. However, subject to results obtained from development testing, the TMF mix may, by agreement with the authority, be transported.

A9.4.8 Mixing can be carried out using any equipment suitable for the manufacture of TMFs in the required quantities provided that the approved mixing procedure is used throughout. Mixing equipment must be

maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and checked regularly. All metering or weighing apparatus must be calibrated regularly according to a Quality Assurance Scheme.

A9.4.9 All binders, additives and admixtures, including diluted solutions must be stored according to the manufacturer's recommendations and used within the recommended shelf life.

A9.4.10 TMFs must be compacted in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations or an agreed compaction regime obtained by prior development and testing.

A9.5 Outline scheme for approval trials

Introduction

A9.5.1 Trials of ARMs or ATs may be carried out by agreement between the undertaker and the authority, under an approval trial agreement.

A9.5.2 This section outlines a scheme under which trials of ARMs and ATs must be carried out. A9.5.5 gives general guidance relating to the organisation of an approval trial. A9.5.6 describes special conditions relating to the scale of an approval trial and its effect on organisational and reporting matters. A9.5.7 outlines the intended duties of each party within the approval trial. A9.5.9 to A9.1.11 comprises a list of headings that describe the key requirements and stages of an approval trial. The headings are considered to represent the minimum essential information required to ensure that the approval trials are carried out in a controlled and agreed manner. The additional information under each heading is for guidance only. The parties to an approval trial (normally an undertaker (who would generally initiate or request the trial) and an authority) may, by agreement with the other party, add, amend or omit any details that do not affect the legal standing of the agreement.

A9.5.3 When an ARM or AT has been approved by an authority following a successful trial, the undertaker can provide another authority with the trial data and ask permission to use the ARM or AT in its area. An ARM or AT trialled and approved by one authority must be accepted in different authority areas unless there is a reasonable engineering concern that requires local validation. Authorities can, within reason, request additional information if they have valid engineering concerns. If the undertaker is unable to satisfy the request for additional information, additional trials may be necessary.

A9.5.4 ARMs and ATs can be used without trials if an authority agrees. However, where no trials have taken place, there is no requirement for another authority to accept the use of those ARMs or ATs.

General requirements, special considerations and duties of parties to approval trials

A9.5.5

General requirements for approval trials

- 1) Trials may be undertaken in any road category with the approval of the authority. Trials cannot be undertaken in a high amenity or high duty footway, footpath or cycle track, or a site of special scientific interest unless by agreement. Off-site trials can also be used if appropriate.
- 2) Approval trials in carriageways must be conducted on a minimum of three separate sites selected to represent a range of traffic conditions. A number of positions in the carriageway (e.g. within and outside a wheel track, longitudinal and transverse orientation (for trench reinstatements)) should also be considered.
- 3) The duration of all approval trials must be agreed between the undertaker and the authority. The duration will depend on provided evidence of performance, timescale to demonstrate performance and type of ARM or AT as follows:
 - ATs used where the technology can be directly validated during the works (for example an alternative excavation or compaction method) should typically be less than a year. By the end of the trial, a technical report with evidence of compliance must be submitted.
 - For other ATs, if evidence of performance is presented (for example track record of use from other sectors or accelerated loading trials) the duration may be 2 years; however, in the absence of this it may be up to 5 years. By the end of the trial, a technical report with evidence of compliance must be submitted.
 - SMRs and TMFs complying with the requirements in A9 should be 2 years. By the end of the trial, a technical report with evidence of compliance must be submitted.
 - For other ARMs, if evidence of performance is presented (for example track record of use from other sectors, accelerated loading trials and durability testing) the duration may be 2 years. However, in the absence of this it may be up to 5 years. By the end of the trial, a technical report with evidence of compliance must be submitted.
- 4) A record of all test sites must be kept to enable effective monitoring and management of the asset. Specific details must be agreed as part of the Memorandum of Understanding for the approval process.
- 5) The final inspection must be completed within one month following the end of trial period. The undertaker must notify the authority of the inspection date at least seven working days in advance. The authority must confirm their intention to attend or otherwise within seven working days of receipt of such notification. The inspection measures should be carried out on the notified date at an agreed time or an agreed alternative date. Where the authority does not attend the final inspection, the undertaker must provide the authority with a summary of the investigation within 28 days of the inspection. The undertaker should keep a photographic record of the approval trial reinstatements at the time of inspection and send copies to the authority.

- 6) Core sampling and interim inspections of any type may be carried out on approval trial reinstatements at any time. Where required as part of the approval trial agreement, the undertaker must notify the authority at least five working days in advance of such works. Any holes created during these activities must be reinstated in accordance with the relevant requirements of this Code.
- 7) Reinstatements may be accidentally damaged during the trial and rendered unsuitable for accurate assessment. It is therefore recommended that trials should include duplicate sites for each road type, category, position, orientation, etc.
- 8) Where an approval trial reinstatement requires remedial action, then regardless of the reason, the undertaker must provide the authority with details of the remedial measures within one month of completion. Where practicable, records of surface measurements, photographs etc taken before and after the remedial work should be kept by the undertaker and copies provided to the authority.
- 9) With the written approval of the authority further use of the ARMs or ATs under trial may be permitted before completion of the trial. Such approval will only apply to works carried out within the boundary of the authority that has given approval. Further use of ARMs or ATs can only be in road categories up to and including the highest category used for the approved trial.
- 10) On successful completion of the approval trial the results, audit trail and Factory Production Control or Quality System documentation should be shared with other authorities from whom permission for further use is to be sought. By agreement between the parties involved, some or all of the details of the trials can be forwarded to Regional HAUC or National HAUC to allow them to be made available nationally. Further use of ARMs or ATs can only take place in road categories up to and including the highest category used for the approved trial.
- 11) After successful completion of an approval trial, permission for further use of the ARM or ATs must not be unreasonably withheld by any other authority and must only be denied for engineering reasons. Where reasonable engineering concerns are expressed, the nature of which must be stated, then additional assessment may be required by the authority.
- 12) It is recognised that the scope, extent and duration of ARM and AT approval trials may vary widely.

A9.5.6

Special considerations for approval trials

- 1) For small-scale approval trials intended to take place on a small number of sites and over a fixed period of time (e.g. for specially prepared approval trial excavations), the undertaker must notify the authority at least one month in advance of each trial.
- 2) Specially prepared excavations should be of similar depth and plan dimensions to the undertaker's routine excavations, and generally not less than 500 mm by 500 mm in plan, or not less than 200 mm wide for

trench excavations. The total combined surface area of all approval trial sites should not be less than 2 m².

- 3) The location and position of the approval trial reinstatements should represent as wide a range as possible (see A9.5.5(2)). If specially prepared sites are to be used, the site locations may be jointly selected.
- 4) Large-scale trials, such as those where the material or technique is used during works, may take place over a longer time period. The undertaker must notify the authority of such trials at least one month before the trial starts. Arrangements for notification and attendance at these approval trials should be included in the trial agreement.
- 5) Any restrictions on size, location and position, number of approval trial sites and/or the period during which the approval trial reinstatements may be carried out, should also be included in the approval trial agreement.
- 6) The agreed trial period starts on the date of installation. Dates for submission of an interim report on the trial should be agreed and the report must be submitted within the agreed period. The final review or reporting must be carried out when the trial sites have reached the agreed age.

A9.5.7 *Duties of parties to approval trials*

- 1) The initiator (usually the undertaker) would be expected to have carried out documented development work to ensure a high level of confidence in the proposed ARM or AT before starting the approval process. The results of such development work should not be unreasonably withheld from the authority.
- 2) The undertaker must provide as much notice of the approval trial reinstatement operation(s) (e.g. location, date/time, excavation, mixing, reinstatement, sampling, post-construction activities etc) as practically possible, in accordance with the requirements of the approval trial agreement.
- 3) The undertaker must not unreasonably withhold information relating to any aspect of the approval trial from the authority.
- 4) The authority must not unreasonably obstruct approval trials or cause their termination provided they are carried out in accordance with the terms of the approval trial agreement.
- 5) Either party has the right to request confidentiality on any matter relating to the approval trial.

Suggested information for inclusion in approval trial agreement

A9.5.8

Prior to the commencement of an approval trial, the following information should be considered by both parties for inclusion in the approval trial agreement.

A9.5.9

General information

- 1) **Parties to trial** – names of undertaker and authority agreeing to approval trial
- 2) **Confidentiality** – parties (if any) to whom trial information may be divulged
- 3) **Geographical extent of trial** – county or district border, utility region or area boundary
- 4) **Scope of trial** – total number of trial reinstatements or maximum number of sites
- 5) **Time limit for trial** – start/end dates
- 6) **Termination criteria** – conditions under which agreement may be ended and notice of termination
- 7) **Signatories/witnesses** – approved officers of appropriate seniority who are permitted to commit their organisation to the execution of the approval trial and who can approve the terms and conditions of the trial.
- 8) **Record of sites where the ARM or AT** has been used and dates of installation.

A9.5.10

Procedural

- 1) **Contemporary records** – details of records required, responsibility for record-keeping
- 2) **Notification details** – notice periods, arrangements for contacting relevant parties to an approval trial
- 3) **Attendance at trials** – parties who may attend an approval trial
- 4) **Review periods/meetings** – dates, participants, procedures for calling ad hoc meetings
- 5) **Post-construction assessment** – test methods to be employed and arrangements for periodic surveying, sampling, etc

A9.5.11

Technical

- 1) **Type of trial site** – routine utility excavations or specially excavated approval trial
- 2) **Location of trial site** – non-high-amenity or non-high-duty footway, cycle track, (including road classification Type 2 to 4) etc
- 3) **Positioning of trial site** – “as excavated”, within wheel track, etc
- 4) **ARMs or ATs to be trialled** – generic SMR or SMF materials
- 5) **ARM or AT details** – Mix design, binder details, additives, dependencies on site conditions or excavated/base material type and condition, details of prior development work
- 6) **ARM or AT preparation** – batching, mixing and placement procedures.
- 7) **Quality control on site** – any tests to be applied to ensure that an ARM has been prepared to the required design
- 8) **Compaction regime** – NFSMRs and SMRs only
- 9) **Sampling requirements** – types of samples and sampling frequency

- 10) Testing laboratories** – contact details of accredited laboratories or otherwise
- 11) Remedial measures for “failed” sites** – replacement with an alternative SMR or SMF material or other approved material or remove from the approval trial agreement
- 12) Future of trial sites** – remove after trial completion or leave in place, future monitoring and/or testing
- 13) Any specific assessment management or maintenance requirements.**
- 14) Confirmation of compliance** with all SROH performance requirements; linked to inspection and defects

Appendix A10

Additional standard materials

A10.0 General

A10.0.1 This appendix includes specifications for hydraulically bound and unbound materials that are options for use in reinstatements drawn from BS EN standards. These materials may be used where listed as an option in this standard. Many of them have technical advantages compared with conventional alternatives, including a modified Type 1 Unbound Mixture (0/20) to mitigate technical risks associated with potential segregation and non-uniform compaction within reinstatements.

A10.0.2 The quality control requirements under A10 for HBMs are for production sites that include specific constituent storage, testing and other related quality control procedures, as specified in BS EN 14227. Products that do not comply with all the requirements of A10 may be proposed under A9.

A10.1 Modified Type 1 Unbound Mixture (0/20)

A10.1.1 Modified Type 1 Unbound Mixture must be made from crushed rock, crushed slag, crushed concrete, recycled aggregates or well burnt non-plastic shale and may contain up to 10% by mass of natural sand passing a 4 mm test sieve.

A10.1.2 The mixture must comply with BS EN 13285 and the grading requirements of Table A10.1.

Table A10.1 Grading requirements for the Modified Type 1 Unbound Mixture (0/20)

Sieve size, mm	Percentage by mass passing		
	Overall grading range	Supplier declared value grading range	Tolerance on the supplier declared value range
40	100	---	---
20	75 - 99	---	---
10	43 - 81	54 – 72	± 15
4	23 - 66	33 – 52	± 15
2	12 - 53	21 – 38	± 15
1	6 - 42	14 – 27	± 13
0.5	3 - 32	9 – 20	± 10
0.063	0 - 12	---	---
Grading of individual batches – differences passing selected sieves			
Retained sieve size, mm	Passing sieve size, mm	Percentage by mass passing	
		Not less than	Not more than
4	10	7	30
2	4	7	30

A10.1.3

Aggregates used in the mixture must be in accordance with BS EN 13242 and Table A10.2.

Table A10.2 Requirements for aggregates used in the Modified Type 1 Unbound Mixture

Crushed, or broken and totally rounded particles crushed rock, crushed manufactured and crushed recycled aggregates (see NOTE 1)	C _{90/3}
Resistance to fragmentation – Los Angeles test	LA ₅₀
Resistance to wear – micro-Deval test	MDE NR (no requirement). The supplier must state the value for the aggregate used
Resistance to freezing and thawing – magnesium sulphate soundness	MS ₃₅
Water absorption	WA24NR (no requirement). The supplier must state the value for the aggregate used.
Volume stability of blast furnace slags	Free from dicalcium silicate and iron disintegration
Volume stability of steel (BOF and EAF) slags	V ₅
All other BS EN 13242 aggregate requirements	Category NR (no requirement).
NOTE: BS EN 13242 assumes that crushed rock aggregates comply with category C90/3 without further testing.	

A10.1.4 The size fraction of the unbound mixture passing a 0.425 mm size test sieve must be non-plastic, as defined by BS 1377-2, and tested in compliance therewith.

A10.1.5 Where the mixture contains recycled coarse aggregate or recycled concrete aggregate, it must be classified by hand sorting the coarse aggregate particles in accordance with BS EN 933-11. The test must be carried out by a suitably trained laboratory technician competent in classifying the constituent classes in accordance with the test method. Recycled coarse aggregate and recycled concrete aggregate must also comply with the requirements of Table A10.3.

Table A10.3. Additional requirements for recycled coarse aggregate and recycled concrete aggregate used in Modified Type 1 Unbound Mixtures

Component	Maximum permitted content (% by mass)
Asphalt (Class Ra)	50
Glass (Class Rg)	25
Other materials (Class X), including wood, plastic and metal	1

A10.1.6 The Modified Type 1 Unbound Mixtures must be non-frost susceptible. Material is classed as non-frost-susceptible if the mean heave is 15 mm or less when tested in accordance with BS 812-124. Comparator specimens with Annex B of BS 812-124 must be used.

A10.2 Hydraulically bound materials (HBMs)

A10.2.1 HBMs must be in accordance with one of the following standards, depending on the binder used:

- BSEN 14227-1: Cement bound granular mixtures
- BSEN 14227-2: Slag bound granular mixtures
- BSEN 14227-3: Fly ash bound granular mixtures
- BSEN 14227-5: Hydraulic road binder bound granular mixtures
- BSEN 14227-15: Hydraulically stabilized soils

A10.2.2 Any HBMs not covered within A10.2, will require approval trials in accordance with A9.

A10.2.3 The HBM producer must make available to the undertaker and authority the information detailed in the 'Designation and Description' clause of the relevant part of BS EN 14227 for the selected HBM. In addition:

- Target proportions of constituents must comply with the requirements of A10.2.1
- Mixture design details and results must be carried out in accordance with A10.2.11 to A10.2.16.
- Mixture performance requirements must be in accordance with A10.2.4

- Method Statement for production, transport, placement and control must be in accordance with A10.2.9.

Constituents

A10.2.4

Aggregates and binders for HBM must comply with BS EN 14227, the respective BS EN specified in Table A10.4 and the requirements of this clause.

Table A10.4 Standards	
Constituent	BS EN
Aggregates	EN 13242
Water	BS EN 1008
Cement	BS EN 197-1
GBS	BS EN 14227-2
ggbs	EN 15167-1
Lime	BS EN 459-1
Gypsum	BS EN 14227-2 or BS EN 14227-3
FA	BS EN 14227-4
ASS	BS EN 14227-2
HRB	BS EN 13282

A10.2.5

The binder constituent proportions must comply with Table A10.5 and must be based on a laboratory mixture design procedure in accordance with A10.2.3.

Table A10.5 Minimum binder or binder constituent additions		
Binder or binder constituent	Mode of use (mode of use not listed below must be subject to approval by the authority)	Minimum addition by dry mass of mixture
Lime / cement / HRB / ggbs	when used with another binder constituent	2%
	when used as sole treating agent	3%
ASS & GBS	when used together	2.5% each
Dry fly ash	when used with cement	4%
	when used with lime	5%
Conditioned (i.e. wet) fly ash	All applications	6%

Storage of constituents at the central mixing hub

- A10.2.6 Aggregates must be stored on a firm and clean substrate for at least 24 hours prior to mixture production. Contamination with other constituents must be avoided.
- A10.2.7 Lime, cement, ground granulated blast furnace slag (ggbs), HRB and dry fly ash must be stored sealed in, for example, a silo or suitable bags.
- A10.2.8 Conditioned (wet) fly ash must have no agglomerations greater than 10 mm size, measured by sieving samples through a 10 mm sieve with not more than 10 seconds gentle agitation. It must be stored under cover for at least 72 hours at a minimum water content of 10%, prior to mixture production.
- A10.2.9 GBS and ASS must be stored as aggregates and used within 3 months of delivery.
- A10.2.10 All constituents must be protected from freezing to ensure suitability for use.

Laboratory mixture design procedure for HBM

- A10.2.11 The producer must design the mixture in accordance with the procedure described here, to meet the compressive strength, immediate stability, volumetric stability and frost resistance requirements of A10.2.4.
- A10.2.12 The composition of HBM must be based on mixture design testing carried out using a minimum of 3 binder contents and a minimum of two water contents at each binder content.
- A10.2.13 The immediate stability at the design water and binder content must be determined using the IBI test in accordance with BS EN 13286-47. The IBI value must be taken as the average of a set of 3 test specimen results.
- A10.2.14 The effect of immersion in water on compressive strength must be assessed in accordance with BS 1924-2 as follows:
- y^1 and $y^2 = 20^\circ\text{C}$ for mixtures containing cement or 40°C for mixtures not containing cement
 - R_{Rc} must be ≥ 80
 - On completion of the immersion stage (y^2) the test specimens must show no signs of cracking or swelling
- A10.2.15 Strength must be taken as the average of at least 3 specimens. The mean of the test results must be greater than the specified strength (C1.5/2 or C3/4) and no individual result can fall below 67% of the strength requirement class. In addition, the mean of the test results must not exceed C9/12.
- A10.2.16 HBM must be non-frost susceptible. Material is classed as non-frost-susceptible if:
- the compressive strength class is C3/4, or
 - the mean heave is 15 mm or less, when tested in accordance with BS 812-124, with the sample preparation in accordance with BS 1924-2.

Mixture performance requirements

A10.2.17

Layer thickness and compressive strength at an age of 28 days requirements must be in accordance with Table A10.6.

Table A10.6 HBMs minimum layer thickness and compressive strength requirements						
Layer	Road type					Footway/ footpath/ cycle track
	0	1	2	3	4	
Base	NP	NP	NP	300 mm C1.5/2	200 mm C1.5/2	---
Base & sub-base	NP	450 mm C3/4	450 mm C3/4	450 mm C1.5/2	350 mm C1.5/2	---
Sub-base or below	150 mm C1.5/2	150 mm C1.5/2	150 mm C1.5/2	150 mm C1.5/2	150 mm C1.5/2	150 mm C1.5/2
Maximum crushing strength at 28 days	C9/12					C8/10
Note: NP = Not permitted Minimum asphalt overlay thickness as per A3 to A7 HBMs are not permitted as CBGM base replacement						

Requirements for production, storage and transporting HBMs

A10.2.18

The HBM must be produced at a central hub facility using a plant that batches by mass and mixes in a forced-action mixer allowing sufficient time in the mixer to produce a homogenous mixture.

A10.2.19

The producer's quality manual should describe the characteristics of any constituent and/or mixture storage system and define their mode of operation. The producer must ensure through checks, inspections and records, that such systems are used correctly and that constituents and mixtures maintain their suitability for use during storage.

A10.2.20

The minimum temperature at the time of production of HBM is 3°C and rising.

A10.2.21

At production, the constituents, and on leaving the production facility, the HBM must be free from ice and frozen agglomerations.

A10.2.22

On leaving the production facility, HBM must have a water content suitable for compaction as determined during the design stage and monitored in accordance with the production quality control plan.

A10.2.23

HBM must be transported directly to the point of placement and protected from the weather during transit and unloading.

Production control testing and checks

A10.2.24 The HBM producer must have an established and maintained quality manual describing policy and procedures for production control in accordance with the production control annex of BS EN 14227 and as follows.

A10.2.25 Tests & checks before and during production

- 1) Constituents sourced off-site require monthly certification (or by delivery for cement etc); aggregates to BS EN 13242, cement to BS EN 197, fly ash to BS EN 14227-4 and GBS and ggbs to BS EN14227-2 Annex A.
- 2) In accordance with BS EN 14277, and using the mixing plant's automated surveillance and data collection system where appropriate, characteristics that require control during production include:
 - pre-production properties of the constituents including plasticity, water content, and freedom from frozen agglomerations
 - proportioning of the constituents including added water
 - grading of the fresh mixture
 - water content of the fresh mixture
 - time of production
 - temperature at production
- 3) The proportioning must comply with the requirements of the target composition of the mixture.
- 4) The above tests and checks must be carried out daily and recorded.

A10.2.26 Laboratory mechanical performance tests

- 1) Each day of production, or as detailed in the Quality Manual/Method Statement, the producer must sample the HBM for compliance with the compressive strength of Table A10.7 Sampling must be in accordance with BS 1924-1.
- 2) Cubic or cylindrical specimen manufacture, curing and testing for compressive strength must be in accordance with Table A10.6. Cubes for compression testing must be 150 mm nominal size.
- 3) A representative sub-sample must be taken from each sample for the determination of water content in accordance with BS 1924-2. Sampling must be in accordance with BS 1924-1.

Table A10.7 Compressive strength testing requirements for HBMs

Cement used	Specimen manufacture, nominal wet density & curing regime	Curing temperature	Test method for determination of R_c	Age at test
Yes	BS 1924-2 and BS EN 13286-41	20°C	BS EN 13286-41	28 days (See note 1)
No		40°C		
Note For control purposes, HBM may be assessed on the basis of 7-day or other early age strength, provided that a correlation is established between the early age and 28-day strength				

Requirements for placement, compaction, protection and overlay

A10.2.27

Laying and compaction of HBM layers, including any reworking and re-use, whether constructed in one or more lifts, must be carried out without segregation, drying out or being on the onset of setting.

A10.2.28

The construction period, in degree hours, is the summation of the products of the average air temperature above 3 °C (temperature T in °C) and time for each period (time t in hours): i.e. construction period limit = $\Sigma(T.t)$. The air temperature during the interval, t , must not fluctuate by more than 4 °C. The construction periods are summarized in Table 10.8 and Table 10.9.

Table A10.8 Construction period for HBM when one binder constituent only or binder constituents added at the same time

Binder	Construction period (°C·h)
Other constituents, combinations, possibilities not listed below in this table	Producer to determine and evidence during the mixture design procedure
CEMI used as part of the mix	35
Lime with ggbs	200
Lime with SiFA (SiFA both as a binder constituent and as aggregate)	850
Lime alone	1700
GBS alone, ASS along, GBS + ASS	3000

Table A10.9 Construction period for HBM when one binder constituent only or binder constituents added at the same time

Binder	Construction period (°C·h)
Other constituents, combinations, possibilities not listed below in this table	Producer to determine and evidence during the mixture design procedure
SiFA followed by CEMI	35 after cement addition
ggbs followed by CEMI	35 after cement addition but within 850 of ggbs addition
Lime followed by CEMI	35 after cement addition but within 1 700 of ggbs addition
Lime followed by ggbs	200 after ggbs addition but within 1 700 of lime addition
Lime followed by SiFA	850 after SiFA addition but within 1 700 of lime addition
GBS + ASS	3 000 after final addition

- A10.2.29** The minimum layer thickness or lift thickness for layers constructed in 2 or more lifts is 100 mm. Where the total thickness laid exceeds 1000 mm, the minimum crushing strength requirement of C3/4 applies to the top 1000 mm only and a minimum of C1.5/2 below this depth.
- A10.2.30** Making-up the surface level of the layer after initial compaction is not permitted for single lift working or for the uppermost lift in multiple lift working.
- A10.2.31** For multiple lift working, fresh HBM must not be laid on HBM that has been allowed to dry. The temporary intermediate surfaces of lifts must be kept moist.
- A10.2.32** The face of previously compacted HBM or other material must be vertical and straight before butting fresh material against it.
- A10.2.33** Compaction to refusal of the HBM must be carried out in accordance with the method for granular and cement bound materials in Table A8.1 in A8.
- A10.2.34** After compaction, the surface must be closed and free from cracks, loose or segregated material, visible voids and other defects. All defective areas must be rectified within the construction period for the binder stated in Table A10.8. If rectification is not completed within the construction period, the defective area must be removed to the full thickness of the layer, and new mixture laid and compacted.
- A10.2.35** *Cold and wet weather working*
- 1) HBM must not be laid on a frozen surface.
 - 2) In the case of heavy or persistent rain, works must cease, and laid material must be compacted immediately.

A10.2.36 *Curing, protection and overlay of HBM*

- 1) Unless overlain immediately, the upper surface of the HBM must be cured to prevent loss of moisture by applying a bituminous emulsion spray complying with BS 434-1 at a minimum rate of 0.5 l/m² to produce an even and continuous coverage of bitumen. The surface must be free of loose material and standing water before spraying. The curing membrane must be protected from any damage until placement of the overlaying layer.
- 2) Overlaying of the HBM is permitted at any time for HBM with IBI category IPI25. Alternatively, overlay is only permitted once the material has gained sufficient strength to enable compaction of the overlying layer.

Method Statement

A10.2.37 The producer must provide a method statement for the HBM detailing best practice for placement, compaction, curing and protection of the reinstatement, including procedures for cold joints, inclement weather, plant breakdown and record keeping.

A10.2.38 The statement must include the intended mixture constituents and proportions, with supporting data from the mixture design results from A10.2.3 and/or historic records to justify the constituents and proportions including water content.

A10.2.39 The statement must include a sample record sheet for submitting the data required in Clause A10.2.8.

A10.2.40 The undertaker must not change construction procedures without the agreement of the producer.

Appendix A11

Product Equivalence

Note on the implications of the decision to leave the European Union.

On 23 June 2016, the EU referendum took place and the people of the United Kingdom voted to leave the European Union. The UK remains a full member of the European Union until 29 March 2019 and all the rights and obligations of EU membership remain in force. During this period the Government will continue to negotiate, implement and apply EU legislation. The outcome of the exit negotiations will determine what arrangements apply in relation to EU legislation in future once the UK has left the EU.

There is a requirement in European Union (EU) legislation to avoid barriers to trade particularly in respect of European Economic Area (EEA) states.

Mutual recognition and equivalence are the principles that a product lawfully marketed in one-member state (i.e. which complies with the relevant standards in that state) should be allowed to be marketed in any other member state. Public procurement bodies must not create barriers to trade by specifying requirements that are not related to the function or performance of a product unless there is sound justification for doing so.

1 Recognition of equivalent standards and testing

The requirement for goods or materials to comply with certain specifications or to undergo specified tests must be satisfied if such goods or materials comply with equivalent specifications of, or have undergone equivalent tests in, another member state of the EEA.

2 Standards, Quality Management and acceptance

Where there is a requirement for compliance with any part of a “British Standard”, that requirement may be met by compliance with:

- (a) a standard or code of practice of a national standards body or equivalent body of any EEA state or Turkey;
- (b) any international standard recognised for use as a standard or code of practice by any EEA state or Turkey;
- (c) a technical specification recognised for use as a standard by a public authority of any EEA state or Turkey; or

(d) a European Technical Assessment issued in accordance with the procedure set out in the construction products regulation (EU) No 305/2011 provided that the relevant standard imposes an equivalent level of performance and safety provided for by the stated Standard or technical specification.

EEA state means a state which is a contracting party to the European Economic Area Agreement. British Standard” means any standard published by the British Standards Institution including adopted European or other international standards.

3 Sampling and testing goods and materials

Tests and associated sampling must be undertaken by testing laboratories accredited in accordance with BS EN ISO/IEC 17025. The accreditation must be by the United Kingdom Accreditation Service (UKAS) or equivalent European Accreditation organisation which is party to a multi-lateral agreement (MLA) with UKAS or any other equivalent International Accreditation Forum MLA signatory with a scope that includes BS EN ISO/IEC 17025.

Where UKAS or equivalent laboratory accreditation is required the results must be reported on an official UKAS or equivalent accredited laboratory test report or certificate.

Where goods or materials are accepted based on an equivalent standard, Quality Management Scheme, Product Certification Scheme or Product Acceptance Scheme, testing and sampling as specified in or applicable to such an equivalent standard Quality Management Scheme, Product Certification Scheme or Product Acceptance Scheme should be accepted.

Appendix A12

Reinstatement of modular surface layers

A12.1 Interim reinstatement

- A12.1.1 Where an interim reinstatement is required, the existing modules should be re-used, including any broken modules. Where damage has resulted in fragmentation or widespread breakage of modules [subject to the special case of natural material modules (as set out in A12.2.5 and A12.2.6)], then bituminous mixtures may be used for an interim reinstatement provided they meet the performance requirements of S2 and compaction of such mixtures does not result in further damage to adjacent modules.

A12.2 Permanent reinstatement

General

- A12.2.1 Permanent reinstatement of modular surface layers should be generally carried out in accordance with BS 7533.
- A12.2.2 Permanent reinstatement of modules must include all modules that are situated within or extend beyond the effective width of the reinstatement (W) described in S2.1.5 and must also include any other modules which are disturbed in the course of carrying out the excavation or reinstatement.
- A12.2.3 Clean undamaged modules must be re-used for permanent reinstatement; broken modules cannot be used for permanent reinstatement and must be replaced.
- A12.2.4 Laying course material must be sand or mortar, to match the characteristics of the existing type and thickness. Unless otherwise notified by the authority, where sand is present, laying course and jointing materials must be in accordance with BS7533: Part 3. For all roads and footways, the grading of the laying course material must be in accordance with Table D.3 Category II. Jointing materials to Section D1.2, must be applied to gaps between individual modules at the time of permanent reinstatement. Where mortar has been used for laying course material the undertaker must seek guidance from the authority as to the specification to be used. This information must not be unreasonably withheld.

Requirements for natural material modules

A12.2.5 *General for whole natural material modules*

- 1) The reinstatement of whole natural material modules must be in accordance with the general requirements of A12.2.1 to A12.2.4.

A12.2.6 *Damaged natural material modules*

- 1) Where damaged modules are to be re-used in the reinstatement, a joint inspection must be arranged before starting excavation to agree the extent of usage of damaged modules and the minimum size acceptable for re-use.
- 2) The undertaker should make a photographic record of the joint inspection which should be agreed between the undertaker and the authority.
- 3) The undertaker must use best endeavours to match existing profiles and meet the tolerances specified in S2. However, where the pre-existing profile of damaged modules is near or in excess of current intervention and construction tolerances specified in S2, it will be difficult for the undertaker to construct a complying reinstatement. The undertaker must use best endeavours to ensure that the interface between its reinstatement and the adjoining surfaces avoid creating hazardous trips.

Infills in modular reinstatements

A12.2.7 *General*

- 1) Where gaps greater than 5 mm between the nearest module and the immediately adjacent fixed feature (such as edgings, channel blocks, drainage features, surface boxes, ironware) or boundary feature (such as walls, fences and the like) arise as a direct result of works, the undertaker should fill them to the full depth of the adjacent paving module as follows:
 - (a) for smaller gaps a 1:4 cement to sand mortar ratio should be used;
 - (b) for larger gaps, where aggregate can be used, a 1:5:3 cement to sand to aggregate concrete ratio should be applied, using a maximum aggregate size of 10 mm.
- 2) Infills should generally be as small as possible. Where the physical characteristics of the bond, fixed feature, or proximity of other fixed features do not allow for a small infill, then best endeavours should be used to achieve surface tolerances (see S2) with the smallest infill possible.
- 3) Infills should match the surrounding modules.
- 4) If the gap requiring a new cement fillet is the result of an uneven surface (existing before commencement of the works), the new cement fillets should be limited to a 1 year guarantee. All practicable effort should be made to avoid the use of cement fillets for this application. For the 1 year guarantee to apply to the cement fillets the undertaker is required to document the existing surface before commencement of

works and must be able to demonstrate why all alternatives to the use of cement fillets for this application have been disregarded.

A12.2.8 *Infill widths and limitations*

- 1) Where possible, infills should be limited to a maximum width of 50 mm in modular areas, irrespective of whether the existing footway was originally constructed in accordance with BS7533.
- 2) In the case of modules where one side of the module is greater than 305 mm, there are instances where it is permissible to increase the width of the infill to a maximum of 150 mm to achieve a better engineering and aesthetically pleasing reinstatement. These include instances where the intervening distance is less than 150 mm:
 - (a) between the undertaker's newly laid apparatus and the nearest module (on any side), or
 - (b) between two or more pieces of undertaker's newly laid apparatus, or
 - (c) to an existing fixed or boundary feature.

Where it can be shown to be acceptable custom and practice, in exceptional cases, the maximum permissible infill width may be increased to 200 mm, for irregularly shaped apparatus. Typical examples are in Notes for Guidance NGA12.

- 3) Similarly, for modules where all sides are 305 mm or less, there are instances where it is permissible to increase the width of the infill to the same as the full width of module (measured on the shortest side) to achieve a better engineering and aesthetically pleasing reinstatement. These include instances where the intervening distance is less than the full width of a module plus 25 mm (measured on the shortest side):
 - (a) between the undertaker's newly laid apparatus and the nearest module (on any side), or
 - (b) between two or more pieces of undertaker's newly laid apparatus, or
 - (c) to an existing fixed or boundary feature.

Typical examples are in notes for Guidance NGA12.

A12.2.9 *Acceptable localised loss of modular pattern*

- 1) Physical characteristics may prevent or limit the possibility of completing a uniform and closely matching modular reinstatement immediately adjacent to features. The physical characteristics of the module itself, the existing as-laid bond, as well as the physical characteristics of the fixed or boundary feature, may individually or collectively contribute to such a situation.
- 2) In all instances, the undertaker should attempt to minimise the width of the infill. However, the following exceptions are permissible:
 - (a) Where the above physical characteristics are present, permanently reinstated modules immediately adjacent to the feature may be laid with a degree of localised loss of bond pattern. The introduction of a stringer (or in some cases, soldier) course immediately adjacent to the feature is not considered as a loss of bond pattern. The loss of

bond pattern should be limited, where practicable, to the first two rows beyond any stringer course, being laid in such a manner as to aesthetically integrate with the surrounded bond pattern. Typical examples are indicated in Notes for Guidance NGA12.

- (b) If adjacent modules abut an existing contiguous infill, such as at a property boundary, then the infill must match the existing.
- (c) In the case of fixed features that are not rectangular, there is no requirement to cut modules to match the edge profile of the fixed feature to otherwise reduce the infill at irregular edges.
- (d) Where localised practice adopted by the authority for its own works differs from the above, infills may be laid to a standard consistent with that of the authority.

A12.3 Provision of replacement modules

- A12.3.1 Authorities are advised to retain stocks of modules used in their areas to enable them to provide replacements when required. Where no suitable replacements are available, authorities should assist undertakers in locating sources elsewhere.
- A12.3.2 Every effort should be made to match, in order of preference, the colour, shape and size of existing modules when reinstating the site.
- A12.3.3 Where modules are found to be damaged before work starts, the authority may provide suitable replacements to the undertaker, free of charge.
- A12.3.4 Where replacements modules are required owing to loss or breakages arising from the undertaker's works, the undertaker must reinstate with modules purchased at the undertaker's expense or purchased from the authority at reasonable cost.
- A12.3.5 If an appropriate module is not identified, the undertaker must use best endeavours to use the most appropriate source of modules.

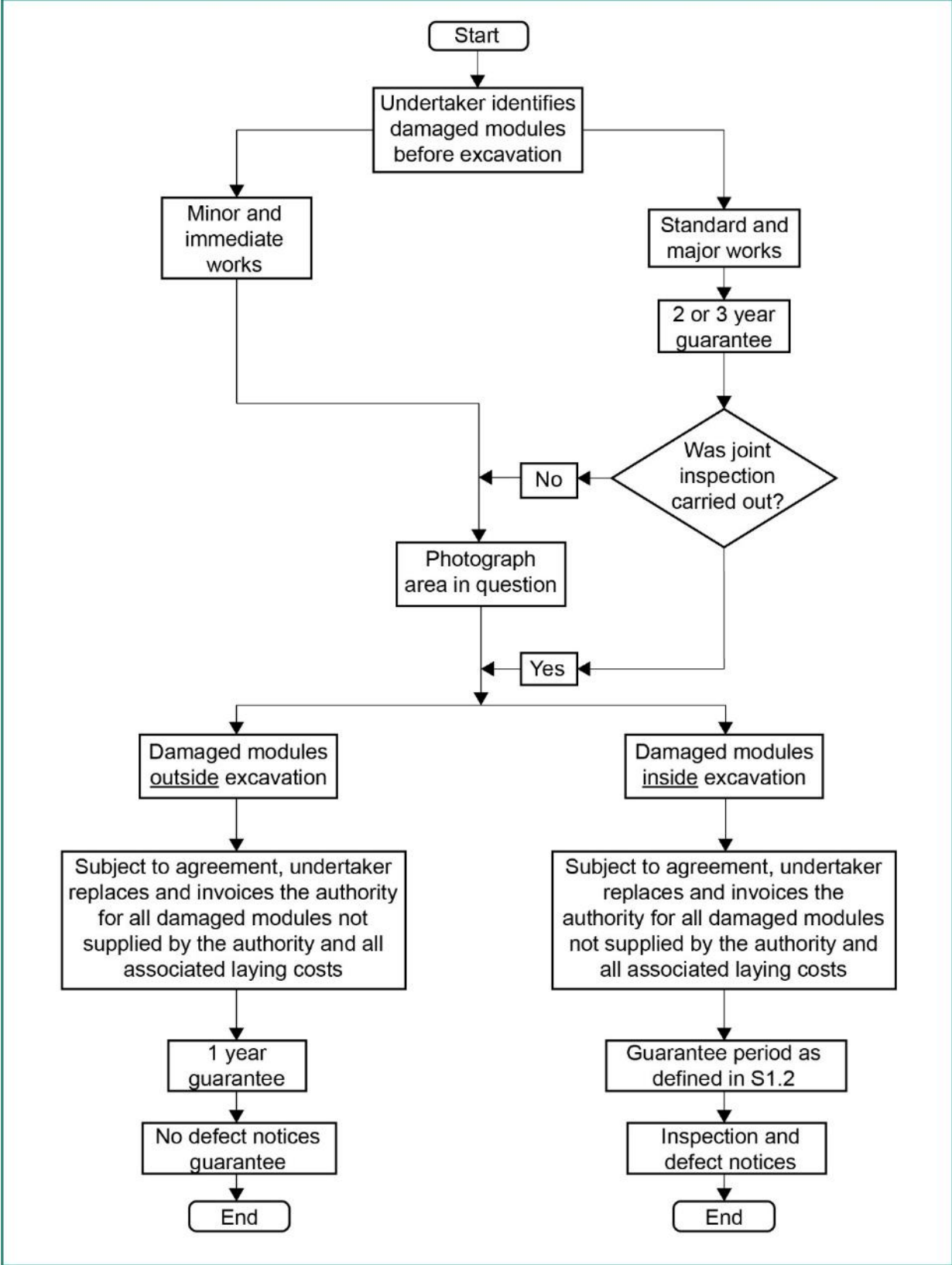
A12.4 Joint inspections and recovery of costs

- A12.4.1 Within limits of undertaker's works – Following notification from the undertaker, a joint inspection must be arranged prior to the commencement of all standard or major works to agree the extent of damaged, settled or deformed surfacing within the limits of the works. Where the authority does not provide suitable replacements to the undertaker in accordance with paragraph A12.3.1 above, it may contribute to the undertaker the sum notified by the undertaker as the cost of replacing the same.
- A12.4.2 Outside limits of undertaker's works – Following notification from the undertaker, a joint inspection must be arranged to agree the need and extent of any remedial measures outside of the limits of the undertaker's works. An apportionment of the additional costs, based on the relative areas of permanent reinstatement, must be agreed. In the event of an authority failing to agree to meet a proportion of the costs of reinstating modules, the undertaker must proceed in accordance with S2.8.

A12.4.3

Prior joint inspections will usually be impractical for minor and immediate works. However, such works are usually small individual excavations and a proportion of such works will be inspected by the authority, within the sample inspection regime. On completion of all minor and immediate works, the undertaker must be free, at its discretion subject to paragraphs S2.8 and A12.3.3, to recover all reasonable costs from the authority according to the procedure illustrated in Figure A12.1.

Figure A12.1 Procedure for pre-existing damage to modular surfaces



Notes for Guidance

NG1 Operational principles

NG1.1

General

- 1) The primary objective of this Code is to ensure that reinstatements are completed to a permanent standard, as soon as is practicable. Undertakers and authority personnel should work together, in close co-operation to achieve these objectives.
- 2) Depending on the conditions, this may require a joint site inspection before starting work. Such joint pre-inspections may be of an informal nature, by agreement, and should be carried out at the earliest convenience of both parties. Where either party fails to attend any agreed pre-inspection, or where existing site conditions warrant concern, it is recommended that the undertaker retains a photographic record of the existing surfaces, prior to starting work.
- 3) This Code may require a formal notification of circumstances or other requirements, depending on the conditions of the site, before starting works. Such pre-notifications should be issued at the earliest possible opportunity. Undertakers must comply with such notification issued at the street works notice stage and should make reasonable efforts to comply with any notification issued thereafter.
- 4) Where this Code allows several options, it is recommended, wherever practicable, to agree a preferred option from the alternatives available. This principle should be applied to all sections where alternatives are provided.

NG1.2

Guarantee period

- 1) Where an authority intends to resurface or reconstruct a section of road, the undertaker may complete any reinstatement to an alternative interim standard, by agreement. The guarantee period must thereafter be waived unless the undertaker's reinstatement can be shown to be grossly substandard. It is expected that agreement to this procedure will be conditional upon all savings in costs made by not carrying out a permanent reinstatement being shared equally between undertaker and authority.
- 2) Where site circumstances are considered to militate against a successful permanent reinstatement, an interim period of up to a further 6 months may be adopted before it is necessary to complete the permanent reinstatement.
- 3) In designated high amenity locations and areas with high quality surfaces, there is benefit in completing the permanent reinstatement

immediately or as expeditiously as possible. To facilitate a permanent reinstatement, materials need to be identified and ordered early in the works planning process. Advance notification through the normal co-ordination process is necessary to achieve this and the authority should assist the undertaker to locate sources of suitable similar or equivalent modules, especially if no stocks are available from the authority itself.

NG1.3

Road categories

1) Road categories 0 to 4 are based on the number of millions of standard axles (msa) carried by the road over a 20-year period. Reinstatements are designed on this basis. The traffic loading is calculated in accordance with the following:

- a) Road Type 0 & 1 – DMRB
- b) Road Type 2 – Intermediate between DMRB & LR1132
- c) Road Type 3 & 4 – Transport Research Laboratory reports LR1132, RR 87 & Road Note 29

Some roads that have been constructed in recent years (particularly new housing estate roads constructed under Section 38 of the Highways Act 1980) may have been designed and constructed to DMRB standards. In these cases, the authority must notify the undertaker, in advance of the works, and the undertaker must reinstate the excavation to match the existing construction thickness. It is not possible to match the engineering integrity of existing well-consolidated unbound layers with unbound reinstatement materials. Therefore, there may be significant differences between the existing carriageway construction and the requirements of the Code. The increased thickness of reinstatement materials compensates for this.

2) For any road, its msa rating gives the number of standard axle loads that it is expected to carry over a defined period of time. This msa rating is calculated using the following input data:

- a) 24-hour annual average daily flow (AADF) of commercial vehicles in one direction. The use of AADF data in one direction, averaged from data in each direction, is recommended.
- b) Average vehicle axle factor over a 20-year service life.
- c) Actual sustained annual growth rate of commercial vehicles, averaged over several years, from valid census data.

These data, processed in accordance with DMRB procedures, provide the maximum number of commercial vehicles per day, in each direction, for all road types. Table NG1.1 has been prepared in accordance with the DMRB, showing the maximum annual average daily flow (AADF) in one direction in commercial vehicles per day (cvd) for a single carriageway road, or for both lanes of a dual carriageway, for all road types and all likely traffic growth rates. Appropriate AADF rates for Intermediate years within each five-year period can be calculated by interpolation.

Table NG1.1 – Maximum commercial vehicle traffic per road type						
Year of traffic count	Daily traffic flow - Commercial vehicles/day one direction - Single or dual carriageway					Average growth rate %
	Type 4	Type3	Type 2	Type 1	Type 0	
2016	66	240	638	1383	4499	0
2021	66	240	638	1383	4499	
2026	66	240	638	1383	4499	
2031	66	240	638	1383	4499	
2036	66	240	638	1383	4499	
2016	69	249	664	1440	4689	1
2021	72	262	698	1514	4928	
2026	76	276	734	1591	5179	
2031	80	290	771	1672	5443	
2036	84	304	811	1757	5721	
2016	71	259	687	1494	4869	2
2021	79	296	759	1649	5376	
2026	87	315	838	1821	5935	
2031	96	348	925	2010	6553	
2036	106	384	1022	2219	7235	
2016	74	266	709	1543	5041	3
2021	96	309	822	1789	5844	
2026	100	358	953	2073	6775	
2031	103	369	982	2136	6979	
2036	103	369	982	2136	6979	
2016	74	272	727	1586	5204	4
2021	91	331	555	1930	6331	
2026	110	402	1077	2348	7703	
2031	115	419	1120	2442	8011	
2036	115	419	1120	2442	8011	
2016	77	277	742	1626	5354	5
2021	99	354	948	2075	6833	
2026	126	452	1209	2648	8721	
2031	132	474	1270	2780	9157	
2036	132	474	1270	2780	9157	
2016	79	283	755	1660	5494	6
2021	106	378	1011	2221	7352	
2026	142	506	1352	2972	9839	
2031	150	536	1433	3150	10429	
2036	150	536	1433	3150	10429	
2016	80	286	766	1689	5621	7
2021	112	401	1074	2369	7884	
2026	157	563	1506	3322	11058	
2031	168	602	1612	3555	11832	
2036	168	602	1612	3555	11832	
2016	79	288	772	1715	5736	8
2021	117	423	1135	2520	8429	
2026	171	621	1668	3703	12384	
2031	185	671	1801	4000	13375	
2036	185	671	1801	4000	13375	

3) Where the actual AADF rates for any road are significantly different for each direction and Table NG1.1 indicates different road types in each direction, the highest traffic category applies in both directions.

- 4) Where one-way traffic systems and/or other traffic management schemes result in multi-lane traffic, standard growth rate predictions and lane correction procedures may result in an inaccurate road classification overall. In such cases, whenever reasonably practical, the flow of commercial vehicles should be monitored separately, and traffic calculations completed for each traffic lane.
- 5) Where an existing road is near or beyond its service life and is expected to be re-constructed within the foreseeable future, a temporary re-classification of the road will usually be appropriate, pending re-construction. Such temporary re-classifications should be undertaken by agreement between the parties involved. Similarly, where roads are expected to be re-constructed within the guarantee period of the reinstatement, it will usually be appropriate to amend methods, materials or performance requirements for those reinstatements, by agreement.
- 6) The national network of roads carrying, up to 125 msa within a 20-year period and classified as Types 0 to 4 roads according to the requirements of this Code, will yield a distribution similar to that shown in Table NG1.2.

Table NG1.2 Estimated highway classification

Road Type	% of total
0	< 1
1	< 1
2	< 5
3	< 9
4	> 84

- 7) It is expected that the roads in any authority area will show a distribution similar to that shown in Table NG1.2, although there will be some local variations. In future years, there may be cases where traffic flows change to such a degree that re-classification will be necessary.

NG1.6

Alternative options

Alternative options may be progressed under A9. They include:

1) New materials

Research into new or improved reinstatement materials is often undertaken by various organisations and may produce materials that perform as well as or better than those given in this Code. In order to allow such materials to be proven by development testing, the materials and relevant layer thickness quoted in this Code may be amended or supplemented, subject to agreement.

2) Local materials

Materials may be available locally that have not been defined in any national specification, but which, by experience, are known to give

acceptable performance in service. In order to allow the use of such local materials, the materials and relevant layer thickness quoted in this Code may be amended or supplemented, subject to agreement.

3) Recycled materials:

Recycled materials that do not meet the requirements of this Code (see S1.6.3) can be considered for use as ARMs.

The following is general guidance (not specifically related to ARMs) on recycling:

- a) Guidance on recycling asphalt containing tar can be found in "Managing Reclaimed Asphalt - Highways & Pavements" by ADEPT (<https://www.adeptnet.org.uk/system/files/documents/Managing%20Reclaimed%20Asphalt%20v2016-1a.pdf>). For information, there have been several technologies and material-based innovations within the Highways sector developed to recycle this type of material back into bound layers. Depending on scale/nature of works and the supply chain, some of these innovations may be applicable to street works and could be progressed via A9.
- b) Guidance on recycling on trench arisings can be found in "Recycled and stabilised materials in trench reinstatement" by WRAP (http://www.wrap.org.uk/sites/files/wrap/WAS005-002%20Utilities%20Evidence%20Base%20Report%20_2_.pdf). It provides evidence of material performance and explains where to find additional information.

4) Alternative compaction equipment (included under ATs)

Alternative compaction equipment not specifically permitted in S10 or A8, may be used provided it has been proven to be capable of achieving the performance requirements permitted in S10, A2 or A8. This should be progressed as an AT under A9.

- a) For all compaction plant not shown in A8, an approved operating procedure should be established by development testing in an appropriate trench environment with the relevant material options to meet the performance requirements permitted in S10, A2 or A8. The development testing may be verified by an independent, accredited laboratory.
- b) Where alternative compaction plant is intended to be used on more than one type of material, as defined in A8, an approved compaction procedure must be established for each intended category of material.

NG1.7

Immediate works

The minimum thickness of bituminous surfacing required by S1.7.1 for reinstating immediate works is 40 mm. A greater thickness may be required in areas subject to frequent or heavy traffic if further remedial works are to be avoided during the 10 days permitted duration of immediate works.

A temporary reinstatement may be made to fill an excavation before the apparatus is installed. The use of temporary reinstatement allows trafficking:

- (i) Before the bound layers are fully excavated and when the old backfill, surround and apparatus are in place; or
- (ii) Where there is a delay in placing the bound layers of a permanent reinstatement.

Temporary reinstatements may be used:

- For delays encountered during emergency or planned works (e.g. waiting for specialist staff or equipment to arrive)
- On weekdays if work is limited to weekends
- At weekends and public holidays if work is restricted to weekdays
- For special events (e.g. parades, market days) when road plates are not appropriate.

The main factors to be considered for temporary reinstatements are: trench volume, depth and shoring; materials availability; effect on apparatus; placement and compaction; removal and storage; asphalt specification; and layer thickness.

NG1.8

Apparatus within the road structure

- 1) Apparatus may be present at a shallow depth in some road structures and special requirements may apply to their reinstatement. Both the undertaker and the authority are likely to have certain requirements and this Code may be altered, or supplemented, subject to agreement, to accommodate any such requirements.
- 2) Not all new apparatus needs to be installed to the full depth or width expected by this Code; an example is small diameter cabling and ducting for telecommunications, traffic controls, etc. This Code's requirements may be altered or supplemented, subject to agreement, to accommodate these applications.

NG1.9

Geosynthetic materials, geotextiles and reinforcement grids

Where these materials are used, the manufacturer's instructions must be followed, particularly in relation to appropriate overlaps, fixing and the like.

Trees

Prohibited, precautionary and permitted zones

PROHIBITED ZONE – 1 m from trunk. Excavations of any kind must not be undertaken within this zone unless full consultation with a local authority Tree Officer is undertaken. Materials, plant and spoil must not be stored within this zone.

PRECAUTIONARY ZONE – beneath canopy or branch spread.

Mechanical plant should not be used when excavating in this. Precautions should be undertaken to protect any exposed roots. Materials, plant and spoil should not be stored within this zone. Consult with the local authority Tree Officer if in any doubt.

PERMITTED ZONE – outside of precautionary zone. Excavation in this zone must be done with caution, and the use of mechanical plant should be limited. Any exposed roots should be protected.

Precautions during excavation and reinstatement

1) THE PROHIBITED ZONE

Don't excavate within this zone.

Don't use any form of mechanical plant within this zone.

Don't store materials, plant or equipment within this zone.

Don't move plant or vehicles within this zone.

Don't lean materials against, or chain plant to, the trunk.

Do contact the local authority tree officer or owner of the tree if excavation within this zone is unavoidable.

Do protect any exposed roots uncovered within this zone with dry sacking.

Do backfill with a suitable inert granular and top soil material mix as soon as possible on completion of works.

Do notify the local Authority tree officer or the tree's owner of any damage.

2) THE PRECAUTIONARY ZONE

Don't excavate with machinery. Where excavation is unavoidable within this zone excavate only by hand or use trenchless techniques.

Don't cut roots over 25 mm in diameter, unless advice has been sought from the local Authority tree officer.

Don't repeatedly move/use heavy mechanical plant except on hard standing.

Don't store spoil or building material, including chemicals and fuels, within this zone.

Do prune roots that have to be removed with a sharp tool (e.g. secateurs or handsaw). Make a clean cut and leave as small a wound as possible.

Do backfill the trench with an inert granular material and top soil mix. Compact the backfill with care around the retained roots. On non-highway sites backfill only with excavated soil.

Do protect any exposed roots with dry sacking ensuring this is removed before backfilling.

Do notify the local Authority tree officer or the tree's owner of any damage.

3) THE PERMITTED ZONE

Don't cut roots over 25 mm in diameter unless advice has been sought from the local Authority tree officer.

Do use caution if it is necessary to operate mechanical plant within this zone.

Do prune roots which have to be removed with a sharp tool (e.g. secateurs or handsaw). Make a clean cut and leave as small a wound as possible.

Do protect any exposed roots with dry sacking ensuring this is removed before backfilling.

Do notify the local Authority tree officer or the tree's owner of any damage.

NG2 Performance requirements

NG2.2

Surface profile

Edge depression

Pedestrians and two wheeled vehicles are particularly sensitive to edge depressions. Given that both modes are likely to use roads, footways and cycle tracks, it makes sense to set a single limit for all edge depressions.

Surface depression

Excessive surface depressions reduce ride quality and give rise to noise and vibration. The maximum depth of surface depression within the area of a reinstatement is limited to approximately 2.5% of the width of reinstatement, which represents a mean slope of 1 in 20 (5% gradient). In order to prevent excessive areas of standing water, it is necessary to limit the maximum depth of a surface depression to 25 mm regardless of the reinstatement width.

Surface crowning

Excessive surface crowning will reduce ride quality and give rise to noise and vibration. The maximum height of crowning within the area of a reinstatement is limited to approximately 2.5% of the width of the reinstatement, which represents a mean slope of 1 in 20 (5% gradient). In order to prevent excessive surface irregularity, it is necessary to limit the maximum height of crowning to 25 mm, regardless of the reinstatement width.

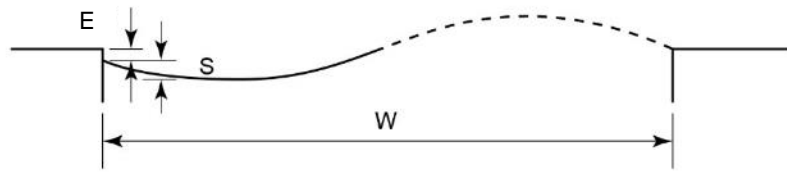
Combined defect

The intervention limits for surface depressions and surface crowning include a reduction in the intervention limit to 80% of the tabulated value, subject to a minimum of 10 mm, where surface depressions and/or crowning and/or edge depressions abut. The individual features must be measured, and the reduction applied, as follows:

1) Combination depressions

Where an edge depression abuts an area of surface depression, the area of abutting depression should be measured as shown in Figure NG2.1. Any surface crowning abutting an area of combined depressions should be measured separately, as shown in Figure NG2.2. The permitted depth of a combined depression is further limited if the depression results in standing water.

Figure NG2.1 Combination depressions

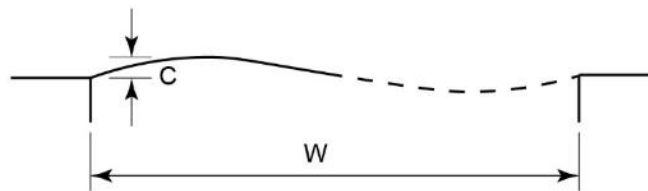


E = Edge depression contribution = 10 mm
S = Surface depression contribution = 10 mm or 80% } whichever is
of tabulated value } the greater

2) Combination crowning

Where an area of surface crowning abuts an edge depression, a surface depression or any combination thereof, then the area of abutting crowning should be measured as shown in Figure NG2.2. The area of abutting depression should be measured separately, as shown in Figure NG2.1. The height of combination crowning should be reduced if it results in standing water.

Figure NG2.2 Combination crowning



C = Surface crowning contribution = 10 mm or 80% of tabulated value, whichever is greater.

NG2.3 Fixed features

Fixed features, e.g. kerbstones and related precast concrete products, channel blocks and drainage fixtures, surface boxes and ironware should be bedded on a sound foundation in accordance with the owner's requirements. In order to prevent excessive areas of standing water, it is necessary to set separate intervention limits for channel blocks, drainage fixtures, surface boxes and ironware.

NG2.4 Surface regularity

Where the use of a rolling straightedge is not permitted, the surface regularity must be assessed on an agreed basis. One method could be the use of a 2 m or 3 m straightedge.

NG2.5 Structural integrity

- 1) Reinstatement materials and compaction requirements have been specified in order to safeguard the pavement structure in and adjacent to the reinstatement. Any substantial or rapid settlement in a reinstatement may therefore indicate a potential reduction in the stability of the adjacent pavement structure, as well as potential defects in the reinstatement.
- 2) There will be cases in adverse circumstances where the correct application of this Code will still result in levels of settlement in the reinstatement that do not meet the requirements of S2.5 for structural integrity. For example, the type and condition of the adjacent ground and/or pavement structure may limit the degree of compaction that can be achieved, so influencing the amount of settlement that could occur.
- 3) Any engineering investigation is intended only to determine the likelihood and extent of any further settlement, and the most cost-effective and convenient method of restoring the structural stability and surface performance of failed sections of a reinstatement to a satisfactory condition.
- 4) In the case of large or deep excavations, it may be appropriate for an authority and an undertaker to agree an extended interim guarantee period, with additional interim surfacing materials laid to restore the running surface. When no further consolidation or settlement is considered likely, a permanent binder course and surface course may be laid, and the permanent guarantee period initiated. In any event, the location and extent of any re-excavation should be mutually agreed, taking full advantage of any bound materials already in place.

NG2.6

Skid resistance

- 1) Adequate skid resistance of the reinstated running surface must be maintained by selection of the polished stone value (PSV), aggregate abrasion value (AAV) and texture depth of the aggregate exposed at the road surface. The exposed aggregate may be precoated chippings rolled into the surface (HRA), coarse aggregate within the surface course, coated material to BS 594987 or any chippings or other aggregate applied in any form of surface dressing or slurry sealing treatment.
- 2) Smaller reinstatements constitute a much lower degree of skidding risk, but the measurement of skid resistance, texture depth and surface regularity become progressively more difficult as the reinstatement width reduces. However, material requirements and laying conditions remain unchanged and it is expected that the skid resistance of smaller reinstatements will not be significantly different.
- 3) For the purposes of identifying reinstatement sites where the risk of skidding is potentially high (Site A, S2.6.8), sections of carriageway exceeding 10% gradient should be identified from existing steep hill warning signs or by notification from the authority. Similarly, bends of less than 100 m radius in roads where the speed limit is greater than 40

mph (65 km/h) should be identified from existing bend, double bend or chevron warning signs or by notification from the authority.

- 4) Given good site conditions, it is possible to obtain reasonably representative measurements of skid resistance and surface regularity on narrower reinstatements but amended test procedures and/or extra care are required. The Mini Texture Meter and Rolling Straightedge should always be fully contained within the limits of the reinstatement. The actual minimum practicable width for these instruments will depend on the trench alignment and radius of curvature. Measurements can be particularly difficult when testing on tight radius bends.
- 5) The undertaker should require the suppliers of bituminous materials to regularly supply details of the constituent materials within their bituminous mixtures and in particular PSV/AAV test results for the coarse aggregate in surface course mixtures and the aggregate used for precoated chippings in HRA.
- 6) Past use of Table S2.7 indicates that the minimum values noted are appropriate in most cases.
- 7) The requirement for PSV only relates to the directly trafficked coarse aggregate size fraction, i.e. feedstock into the asphalt production retained on 4 mm sieve. The research for the use of 53 PSV aggregate was based on crushed hard stone. Some sources of coarse aggregate limestone can have a PSV of 53 or higher. These sources should not be used in this safety critical requirement without an evidenced in-service track record. The historic track record would be versus the 3rd Edition requirement of 55 PSV. The restriction on limestone should not be misinterpreted to prohibit its use as a fine aggregate, filler or in any other application other than the coarse aggregate in the running surface. For chipped HRA applications this requirement only relates to the chippings.

NG2.8

Surface damage outside limits of undertaker's works

Flexible footpaths, footways and cycle tracks can become relatively brittle with age. An aged asphalt surface may be prone to damage during utility or highway works so a collaborative approach is recommended to develop solutions agreeable to all parties.

NG3 Excavation

NG3.1 Breaking the surface

High amenity and natural materials surfaces

- 1) When excavating in modular construction within high amenity areas, or in natural materials within any footway area (as defined in S1.4), the undertaker must lift the existing modules carefully and store for re-use.
- 2) More recent construction tolerances of existing modules in NG3.1(1) often make it unlikely that the first module in an individual excavation can be lifted without the module itself being damaged. In such circumstances, this damage may be inevitable, but damage should be limited to only one module in an individual excavation.

Aesthetics

- 1) The shape and line of larger trenches and their reinstatement should have regard wherever possible to the aesthetic appearance of the reinstatement and its impact on the street scene.

NG3.2 Excavation

- 1) HSG 150 “Health and Safety in Construction” gives guidance to those carrying out excavations.
- 2) Where possible, all excavations should be planned before commencement of works on site.
- 3) Work must be undertaken and supervised by competent personnel.

NG3.4 Side support

- 1) There must be sufficient quantities of appropriate materials available to provide safe trench support, if required.

NG4 Surround to apparatus

NG4.1

General

- 1) It is often necessary for an undertaker to use a specific type or quality of material, and/or special protective components in the immediate vicinity of certain types of underground apparatus. This material is usually referred to as the surround to the apparatus and may include fine unbound granular materials (usually termed 'fine fill'), bound materials, tiles, covers, tubular shields, etc., or any combination thereof. The resulting surround may be required for a variety of reasons, including structural support, low corrosion potential, protection for non-metallic materials or special coatings, etc.
- 2) The nature of the undertakers apparatus, and the protective features of the surround, especially any fine unbound granular materials used within the surround, may impose additional restrictions on the type of compaction equipment that can be used and the necessary operating procedures. However, the entire surround will effectively form a foundation structure for the remainder of the reinstatement and must be capable of providing adequate support for all loading imposed on the reinstatement surface, as well as the weight of the reinstatement structure.
- 3) In selecting material for the surround to apparatus, undertakers should be mindful of the potential for the migration of fines from the adjacent ground or the overlying backfill into any surround material that is open-textured. Such migration will normally result in settlement of the adjacent ground and/or backfill. Migration of fines can be prevented by using a close textured surround or by enclosing the surround within a suitable filter membrane.
- 4) An ARM proposed for use as the surround to apparatus should have been approved for this specific application, which may also require consideration of different types of apparatus.

NG5 Backfill

NG5.1

Backfill material classification

The assumed limiting performance of the five classes of backfill material defined in A1 is shown in Table NG5.1.

Backfill material class	Material performance % CBR
A	Over 15
B	7 to 15
C	4 to 7
D	2 to 4
E	Less than 2

Modified Type 1 Unbound Mixture is the preferred option in narrow trenches and small excavations. It has a lower nominal aggregate size compared to Type 1 Unbound Mixtures. This makes it more resistant to segregation during transportation and placement. Performance within a trench will be comparable to Type 1 Unbound Mixtures.

NG5.3

Additional requirements

1) Frost heave susceptibility

The frost heave test described in BS 812: Part 124 (as amended by SHW Clause 801.8) is costly and time consuming and is not suitable for routine on-site control checks. The test is primarily intended as a method to establish whether an aggregate from a particular source is likely to be frost susceptible when used in road construction. Material for the frost heave test must be representative of the source or sub-grade encountered. Authorities usually maintain a list of “Approved Suppliers of Non-frost Susceptible Materials” and should have knowledge of frost susceptible sub-grades in their locality.

The following notes on identification of potentially frost susceptible material are for guidance but are not exhaustive:

- a) Clay materials can be regarded as non-frost susceptible, particularly when the plasticity index is greater than 15%. Clay/silt mixtures are more difficult to assess and are likely to be of marginal frost susceptibility.
- b) Silts, particularly those with more than 10% passing a 0.063 mm BS sieve size, are likely to be frost susceptible.

- c) Cohesive/granular materials will often be frost susceptible; the quantity and type of granular aggregate and, to a lesser degree the silt fraction are the controlling factors. If the aggregate is frost susceptible it is very likely that the mixture will also be frost susceptible.
- d) Granular materials with more than 10% passing a 0.063 mm BS sieve size have a high potential for frost susceptibility and granular materials with more than 12% passing 0.063 mm are likely to be frost susceptible.
- e) All crushed chalks are frost susceptible and the magnitude of the frost heave will increase with the saturation moisture content of the chalk.
- f) Oolitic and magnesium limestones are likely to be frost susceptible, particularly those where the aggregate saturation moisture content exceeds 3.5%.
- g) Hard carboniferous limestones are unlikely to be frost susceptible unless they have been contaminated with clay or have more than 12% passing 0.063 mm.
- h) Crushed granites will only be frost susceptible if the percentage passing 0.063 mm exceeds 12% and is plastic.
- i) 'As dug' sands and gravels are frequently frost susceptible especially if the percentage passing 0.063 mm BS sieve size is greater than 12% or if it is plastic. Sands and gravels won by "wet working" techniques are unlikely to be frost susceptible unless contaminated by a clay or a high silt fraction.

NG6 Flexible and composite roads

NG6.2

Sub-base reinstatement

- 1) It is expected that a bituminous sub-base would only be selected where the base is also bituminous.
- 2) When placing bituminous material directly onto backfill it is important to ensure that the exposed surface of the backfill has been compacted. This operation is essential to minimise the risk of a build-up of pore water pressure causing the subgrade to become spongy. It is also imperative that construction is phased such that excavated areas are covered, on the same day, with the first layer of bituminous material to prevent the ingress of water. Care should be taken in compacting this first layer. If pore water pressure builds up in the backfill at this stage, then rolling should cease and the material left overnight, or longer if necessary, before placing of any further layers.
- 3) The condition of sub-base material can be assessed using field identification test No. 3 in A1.

NG6.3

Base reinstatement

CBGM base in flexible and composite roads

- 1) CBGM base has a slump of zero and can be suitable for immediate overlay depending on the aggregate grading and interlock prior to any significant strength gain during curing. The relatively low cement-water ratio also means this type of material has low potential for shrinkage during curing. Conversely, concrete and wet lean concrete typically require strength gain to enable overlay without damaging the surface.

Overlaid modular layers

- 1) This Code permits the re-use of cobbles and setts for the reinstatement of the relevant layer. However, it is often extremely difficult to achieve a performance from such reinstatements similar to that of the original, i.e. well interlocked and 'stress hardened' layer. Failure to achieve this structural stiffness could result in failure of the reinstatement and particularly any surfacing materials laid thereon.
- 2) The Code does not permit the re-use of penning, in which modules are laid upright in an interlocking manner, thus exhibiting greater stiffness than an equivalent layer of cobbles or setts would.

Surface reinstatement

Hot rolled asphalt surfaces

- 1) HRA design mixtures give better resistance to deformation than recipe mixtures where queuing of heavy traffic is likely to occur, and may be more economical to lay.
- 2) Type C mixtures use fine aggregates of a coarser grading than Type F mixtures, usually associated with the use of crushed rock fines. Such mixtures tend to be stiffer, more prone to fretting and less well suited to the reinstatement of small excavations.
- 3) HRA 55/14F is a high stone content asphalt (HSC). HSC asphalts can be difficult to hand-lay and are relatively prone to segregation. If these risks are not mitigated, they can lead to problems including failure at joints and surface fretting. Consideration should therefore be given to the options below:
 - a) Reduce nominal aggregate size.
 - b) Softer binder grade.
 - c) Use of permitted materials in A2, by agreement with the authority.

Stone mastic asphalt (SMA) and thin surface course systems

TSCS and SMA can be difficult to hand-lay, especially if they contain highly modified PMBs. If risks related to hand-laying are not mitigated, they can lead to problems including failure at joints and surface fretting. As a risk mitigation, a reduction in nominal aggregate size is included in S6.4. for SMA and TSCS. Consideration should also be given to the selection of the SMA or TSCS and their properties to ensure availability and suitability for the proposed works. Questions should include availability of a low volume supply of mixtures that use specified PMBs (link to tankage and supply from the asphalt plant) and if any modifications to the mix can be adopted, such as workability agents, to mitigate installation risks. The underlying logic is that the performance of the reinstated surface is not detrimentally impacted and that materials are available for the works.

Other bituminous materials

Local authority requirements for the use of specific materials within street works needs to take into account the suitability of the material. In general terms this may mean that a local authority specification for a SMA (or other material) that has been designed for paver installed resurfacing works may not be suitable for use within trench reinstatements without modification. NG6.4.2 gives guidance on this topic and the underlying logic is that the performance of the reinstatement surface is not detrimentally impacted and that materials are available for the works.

High friction surfaces

- 1) As high friction surfaces are usually laid for safety reasons they should be reinstated as soon as is practicable.

- 2) Performance on concrete may not be as good as on bituminous surfaces and the suitability of a system should be checked by reference to its Product Acceptance Scheme certificate.
- 3) Suppliers of some high friction surfacing systems may have specific requirements relating to the condition of the surface on which it is to be applied. Guidance on this should be sought either from the supplier or the Product Acceptance Scheme certificate.
- 4) It is recommended that high friction surfacing systems are applied to a surface course that has been trafficked for some weeks. This is to help prevent cracking extending into the surface course induced by the application of a newly laid high friction surface.

Porous asphalt

- 1) Edge sealing requirements specified in S6.8.7 may not be appropriate with porous asphalts because the free-flow characteristics of the material may be impeded.
- 2) Application rates in this Code are quoted in kg/m² of residual bitumen. This differs from the previous Code which quoted rates in l/m² of total emulsion. For example, the rate of 0.50 kg/m² residual bitumen equates approximately to 1.2 l/m² of K1-40 or 0.80 l/m² of K1-60 emulsion.

Coloured surfaces

- 1) Coloured surfaces are sometimes used for marking bus lanes, accident prevention measures, traffic prioritisation schemes, etc. The use of warning signs, e.g. "Temporary Road Surface", should be considered until the special surface can be restored.
- 2) It may not be possible to obtain coloured surfaces in a wide selection of colours and authorities may have to accept limitations in colour matching. In addition, coloured surfaces can fade or undergo other changes in colour as the materials age.

Other specialist surfacing materials

Texture depth requirements specified in S2.6.2 may not be appropriate for the increasing number of specialist surfacing materials currently being used by some authorities.

Surface treatments

In all roads, where the overall quality of existing surface treatments is to a high standard, it may be difficult to produce small excavations or narrow trenches with surface dressings or other surface treatments that closely and uniformly match the existing adjacent surfaces. Under such circumstances, if the requirement to reapply the surface treatment is only for aesthetic reasons, some localised variation in surface appearance should be acceptable to the authority.

Compaction

The risk of material cooling is relatively higher for narrow reinstatements. Depending on the specifics of the asphalt material, relatively quickly cooling can lead to difficulties in achieving the required level of compaction, and this can result in reduced durability of asphalt materials. Therefore, dependent on the site specifics, resourcing to ensure compaction of asphalt materials in narrow trenches may require additional consideration. Examples of this includes material choice and working practice (number of operatives).

An alternative is hand compaction; however, it is not the preferred method and should only be used where conventional compaction equipment cannot be used, and only for the minimum possible proportion of the reinstatement. Where narrow trenches or small excavations make compaction impracticable, and where conventional equipment cannot be used owing to existing restrictions, PMMA is preferred.

Materials

PMMA are recommended when compaction cannot be readily achieved with conventional materials and/or equipment owing to existing restrictions (kerbs, ironwork, street furniture, narrow trenches, etc).

In some systems pre-manufactured PMMA blocks can be lightly bedded into the hot PMMA. Sufficient space between the blocks is needed to allow the surrounding hotter material to flow around the blocks and fill any voids. For deeper excavations, extra layers of PMMA and blocks are used as required.

When all the blocks have been placed, the material is allowed to cool for 10 minutes.

The excavation is typically filled to within 30 to 50 mm of the finished carriageway surface to allow final installation of the PMMA surfacing.

The following information should typically be retained by the undertaker in relation to any potential future defects:

- Confirmation from the certificate holder that the installer is approved to install the proposed system.
- A copy of the Method Statement in line with the certificate for the chosen system.
- A copy of the material data sheets and/or company COSHH sheets.
- Results of all quality control checks carried out on site by the undertaker and quality assurance information compiled in accordance with the requirements of the certificate, including results from surveillance.

Micro trenches

General

Micro trenches are generally used for major works. Apparatus installed in a micro trench might comprise:

- Mini-ducts, single or multiple, or
- Directly buried cables, single or multiple.

After installation, ducts have cables installed inside them. Cable installation operations should not impact upon the reinstated micro trench.

Any surface cracking or other evidence of distress is likely to result in significant over break during excavation. In this case it is likely that reinstatement would be required using narrow trenching.

Excavation/cleaning

The method of cutting/excavation used for micro trenching can have a significant impact on the ability to achieve an effective reinstatement. The greatest threat to effective reinstatement is the presence of excess moisture. For this reason, a dry cutting process using a vacuum recovery system for the arisings is preferred.

Subsequent excavation and reinstatement by others

The following sub-paragraphs provide guidance to other undertakers or street authorities where their subsequent excavations expose ducts or cables in micro trenches.

During excavation, it is expected that the original reinstatement materials above the ducts/cables [materials 1 and 2 as per main paragraph 4] will be removed.

The exposed duct/cable will require temporary support and protection in the same manner as any other exposed service - a small amount of flexibility in the exposed duct/cable will be apparent at the time of excavation.

It is recommended that the owner of the duct/cable should specify that the exposed length should be sleeved inside split steel ducts at this point.

The steel ducts should be made freely available by the owner, and their use will provide:

- increased physical protection during these subsequent reinstatement operations;
- increased service traceability ahead of further re-excavation on future works;
- increased physical protection during the further re-excavation (as coloured material 1 will not have been reinstated, under sub-paragraph 5.1.7 below).

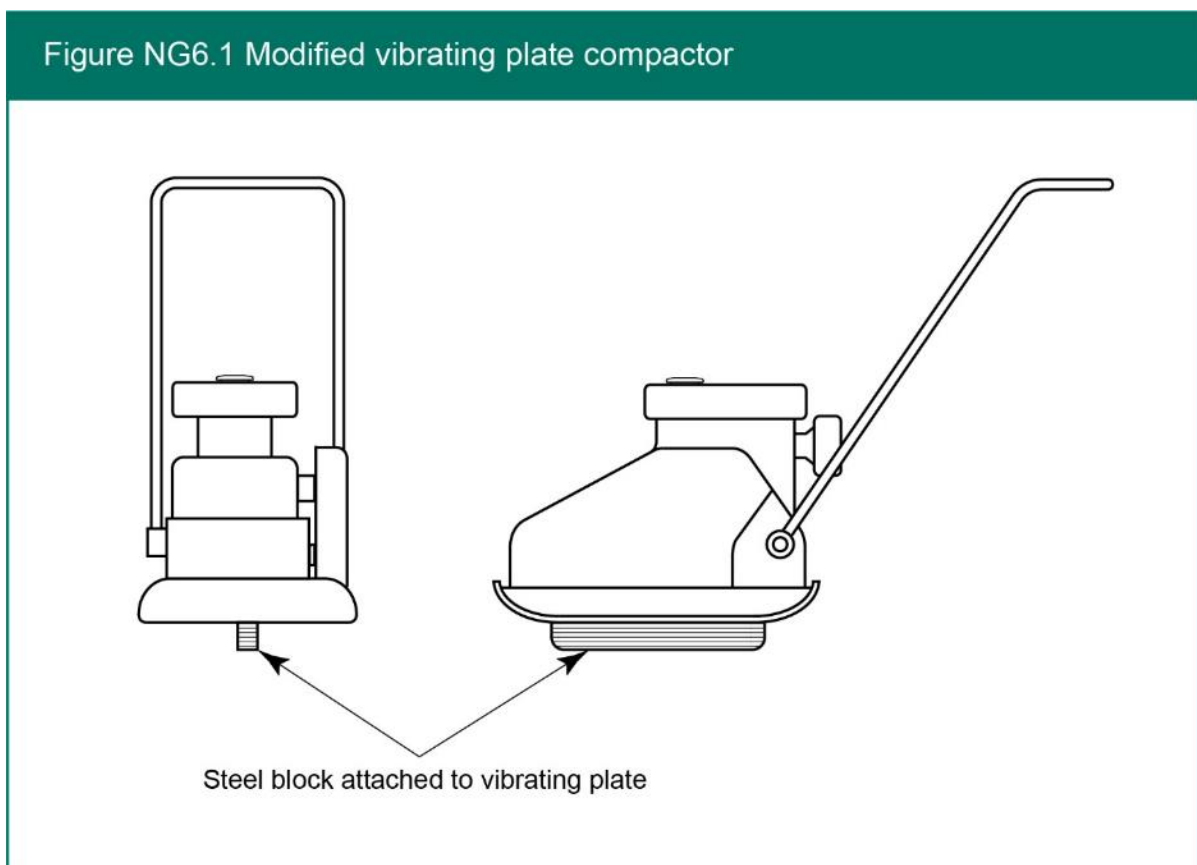
Reinstatement of the subsequent excavation will require the careful deposition and compaction of lower layer granular materials, in a similar fashion to current practices when working around other services.

The small amount of flexibility in the exposed duct/cable is unlikely to allow the line and depth of the duct/cable to deviate greatly from its original as-laid position. As a result, some depth of binder course materials will require careful deposition and compaction to the underside of the sleeved duct/cable.

In the same manner, the next lift of the binder course above the sleeved duct/cable will require careful deposition and compaction. However, with the added protection of the split steel ducts, normal compaction should be achieved, again in a similar fashion to current practices when working around other services in the bound asphalt layers.

Installation

In Figure NG6.1 an example of a suitable compaction tool is shown. This is for guidance only and other modified equipment to achieve compaction may be used.



Materials specification

Table NG6.1 includes indicative guidance on the type of testing anticipated to support the use of alternative reinstatement materials in micro trenches. It is anticipated that any alternative materials will be progressed via A9 and potentially then also supported by a Product Acceptance Scheme certificate.

Table NG6.1 Exemplar performance criteria for micro trenches materials

Indicative performance criteria	Test method	Standard	Exemplar requirements
Flowability or self-compacted materials	L box test	DIN EN 12350-10	A minimum H2/H1 value of 0.8
Adhesion to the slot-cut edges	Adhesion Tensile Testing	Tensile bond tested in accordance with appendix J in TRL report 176	≥ 0.75 MPa
Cohesion and integrity	Indirect Tensile Stiffness Modulus (ITSM)	BS EN 12697-26	Categories or classes for Smin and Smax stiffness to be selected from Table 11 and/or Table 12 of BS EN 13108-4:2016
Rut resistance at high temperatures	Wheel Track	BS EN 12697-22 using the conditions defined in BS EN 13108-20:2016, Table D.1	Categories for the resistance to permanent Deformation to be selected from Tables 9 or 10 of BS EN 13108-1:2016
Fatigue resistance at intermediate temperatures	Indirect Tensile Fatigue Test (ITFT)	BS EN 12697-24 using the conditions defined in BS EN 13108-20:2016, D.9	The product categories for the resistance to fatigue, selected from Table 18 or Table 19 of BS EN 13108-1:2016
Thermal cracking resistance	Thermal Stress Restrained Specimen Test (TSRST)	BS EN 12697-46 using the conditions defined in BS EN 13108-20:2016, D.18	The product categories for the maximum failure temperature to be selected from Table 21 of BS EN 13108-1:2016
Skid resistant	Wehner and Schulze method	BS EN 12697-49	The product categories for the minimum friction after polishing to be selected from Table 23 of BS EN 13108-1:2016
Water resistant materials	Indirect Tensile Strength Ratio following the Highways Agency Product Approval Scheme procedure for Thin Surfacing System for Highways	BS EN 12697-12 using the conditions defined in BS EN 13108-20:2016, D.3.	A minimum retained stiffness ratio of 80%

Large diameter cores

Multiple interlocking or closely spaced large diameter cores have the potential to create areas of weakness in the pavement. This will depend on several site-specific factors including location of the core, composition of the pavement and the coring arrangement.

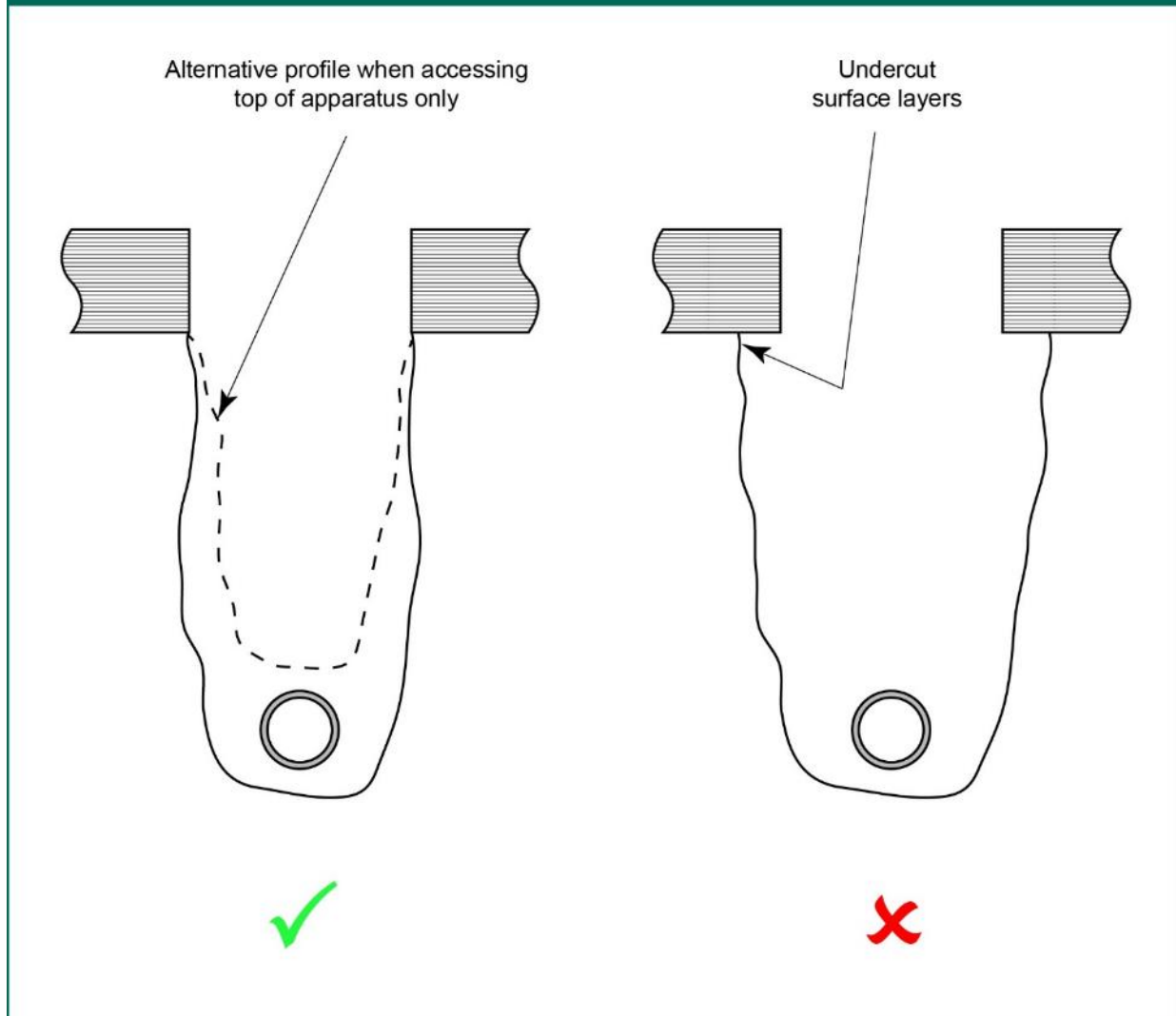
All measurements between core locations are taken as a horizontal measurement between the two closest edges of the cores.

Coring and removal of the large diameter core

Verticality of the core barrel set up on site and the specifics of the coring plant have an influence on the potential to damage the surrounding.

Figure NG6.2 shows a schematic cross section of acceptable and unacceptable excavations. The assumption behind not being able to complete the reinstatement in accordance with S6.7.4 is that there is a risk that compaction will not be achieved if structure has been undermined. This is particularly critical in the zone directly supporting the bound layer adjacent to the core hole. It may be that a suitable flowable material (e.g. PMMA or FCR or A9 FSMR) could be used as an alternative in this scenario.

NG6.2 Large core excavation limits

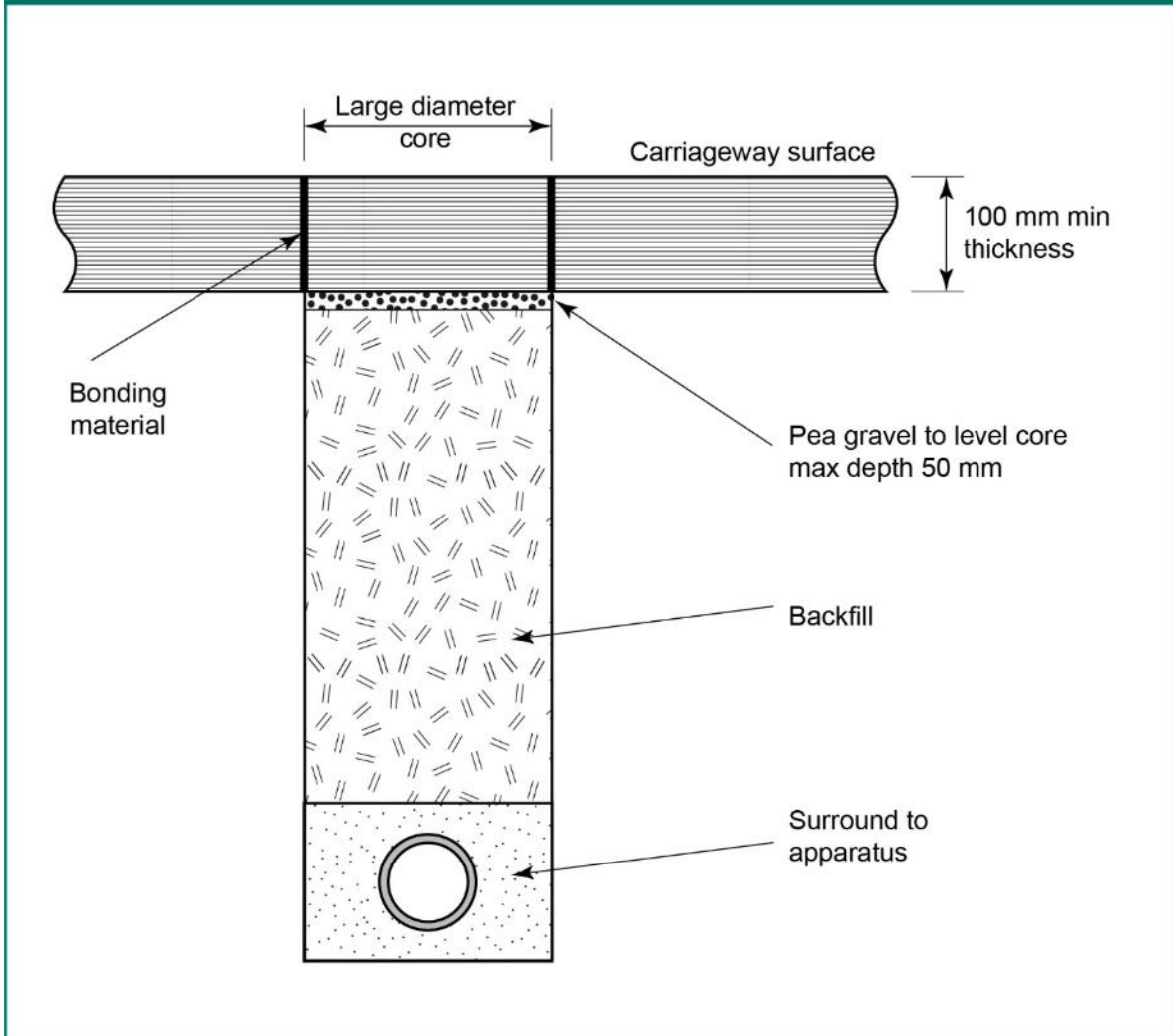
**Materials**

Bonding material needs to fill the space between the core and the hole to securely bond the core to the existing surface. In addition, the bonding material must be volumetrically stable and resistant to cracking and water penetration.

Backfill and compaction

Figure NG6.3 shows typical large core reinstatement using pea gravel for levelling the core during the reinstatement process.

Figure NGA6.3 Typical large core reinstatement



Core reinstatement and bonding

Typical level of detail for the Method Statement for the large diameter core reinstatement:

The core must sit horizontally within the core hole, 25 mm below the surrounding carriageway surface with a nominal gap of 7 mm between the core and the hole.

An alignment clip can be used to aid this process.

The core is then removed, and a sufficient quantity of bonding material is applied to ensure the 100 mm pilot core and the gap between the core and the hole is completely filled. There must be no visible voids present.

A satisfactory result is confirmed by the presence of a small amount of bonding material extruding to the surface.

When suitably cured, the excess material must be removed from the surface and any adjacent areas. The reinstated core must be left in an acceptable visible condition. If power washing or similar processes are applied, care should be taken to avoid washing contaminated fluids into drainage systems.

Base and edge preparation

Base preparation

- 1) Bond coating materials are generally based on rapid curing anionic or cationic bitumen emulsions to BS 434, with approximately 40% bitumen content. New bond coating materials are becoming available, and the trial use of more modern variants is recommended.
- 2) Application rates in this Code are quoted in kg/m² of residual bitumen. This differs from the previous Code which quoted rates in l/m² of total emulsion. For example, the rate of 0.15 kg/m² residual bitumen equates approximately to 0.35 l/m² of 1-40 or 0.25 l/m² of K1-60 emulsion.
- 3) Further guidance on application of bond coats can be found in BS594987.

Edge preparation

The shape of the trench should not hinder the compaction of material at the reinstatement perimeter. When angles less than 90° are used, special care must be taken to comply with compaction requirements. These include use of appropriately shaped hand compaction tools.

Edge sealant materials are generally based on rapid curing bitumen emulsions to BS EN 13808, typically in the range 40 to 100 pen and approximately 70% bitumen content, or hot bitumen to BS EN 12591 typically 50 or 70 penetration grade. An increasing number of high build and rubberised edge sealants are becoming available and, in general, are preferred. Alternatives to these materials exist and if there are any doubts as to their effectiveness they may be used on a trial basis (A9).

When using edge sealant materials, strict adherence to manufacturer's instructions is essential. Dependent on weather conditions brushed sealant drying times may vary between 5 minutes and 2 hours, whilst spray sealant times may vary between 1 and 15 minutes before reinstatement can take place.

Additionally, prior to application:

- All excess water and loose material should be removed from the cut faces of the reinstatement;
- All bound vertical edges must be clean and free from slurry and dust etc. with the stone in the existing layers clearly visible.

The following case study data sheets illustrate the results of edge sealant application under different edge conditions:

- Figure NG6.4: Example 1 – dry and clean;
- Figure NG6.5: Example 2 – wet;
- Figure NG6.6: Example 3 – dirty and damp.

Figure NG6.4 Example 1

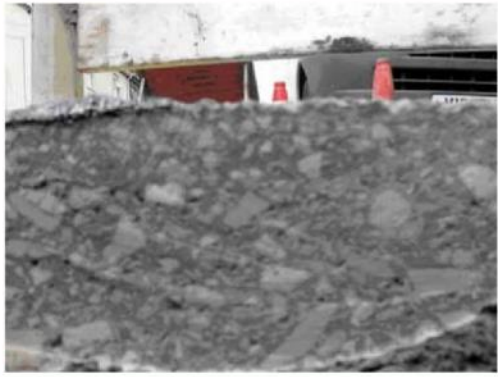


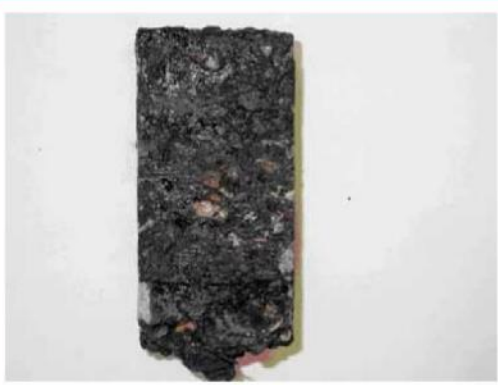
	<p>A</p>	<p>EXAMPLE 1 DRY/CLEAN EDGE CONDITIONS GOOD BONDING [Weather: dry, warm, overcast]</p>	
		<p>B</p>	<p>Photo A: Clean and dry saw-cut edge.</p> <p>Photo B: First application of edge sealant or edge sealing system.</p>
		<p>C</p>	<p>Photo C: Second application of edge sealant or edge sealing system to top of reinstatement edge following compaction of first reinstatement lift.</p> <p>Photo D – Core Comments:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Core taken through joint shows that edge sealant or edge sealing system has adhered to vertical edge; • A good bond observed between reinstatement and adjacent surfacing.
		<p>D</p>	<p>Overall Comments: Reinstatement edge was clean, free of dust or 'caked' saw coolant.</p>

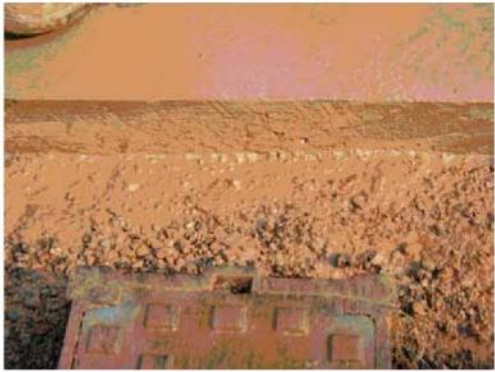







Figure NG6.5 Example 2	
A	 <p>EXAMPLE 2 WET EDGE CONDITIONS POOR BONDING [Weather: dry, hot sunny]</p>
B	 <p>Photo A Coating of wet slurry on saw-cut edge.</p> <p>Photo B: First application of edge sealant or edge sealing system. [Only 5 minutes of drying time allowed before reinstatement commenced].</p> <p>Photo C: Second application of edge sealant or edge sealing system to top of reinstatement edge following compaction of first reinstatement lift. [Only 2 minutes of drying time allowed before reinstatement commenced].</p>
C	 <p>Photo D – Core Comments:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Core taken through joint shows that the edge sealant or edge sealing system has not adhered to vertical edge; • No bond observed between reinstatement and adjacent surfacing.
D	 <p>Overall Comments:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reinstatement edge should have been washed and substantially dried before application of spray sealant; • Allowed drying time does not conform with manufacturer's instructions; • Incorrect application of edge sealant or edge sealing system could permit water penetration into joint, potentially leading to early life edge deterioration, settlement of trench and future (avoidable) defects.

Figure NG6.6 Example 3

	<p>A</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">EXAMPLE 3 DIRTY/DAMP EDGE CONDITIONS POOR BONDING [Weather: light rain]</p>
	<p>B</p>	<p>Photo A Coating of wet slurry on saw-cut edge.</p> <p>Photo B: First application of edge sealant or edge sealing system. [Only 5 minutes of drying time allowed before reinstatement commenced].</p> <p>Photo C: Second application of edge sealant or edge sealing system to top of reinstatement edge following compaction of first reinstatement lift. [Only 2 minutes of drying time allowed before reinstatement commenced].</p>
	<p>C</p>	<p>Photo D – Core Comments:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Core taken through joint shows that the edge sealant or edge sealing system has not adhered to vertical edge; • No bond observed between reinstatement and adjacent surfacing.
	<p>D</p>	<p>Overall Comments:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reinstatement edge should have been washed and substantially dried before application of spray sealant; • Allowed drying time does not conform with manufacturer's instructions; • Incorrect application of edge sealant or edge sealing system could permit water penetration into joint, potentially leading to early life edge deterioration, settlement of trench and future (avoidable) defects.

Overbanding assists in preventing water ingress and seals the edge of a reinstatement at the surface. Concerns relating to skid resistance are dealt with using the pendulum test. Overbanding can be detrimental if it creates localised ponding.

The following information is typically retained by the undertaker in relation to any potential future defects:

- Confirmation from the certificate holder that the installer is approved for installation of their proposed system.
- A copy of the Method Statement in line with the certificate for the chosen system.
- A copy of the material data sheets and/or company COSHH sheets.
- The results of all quality control checks carried out on site by the undertaker and quality assurance information compiled in accordance with the requirements of the Product Acceptance Scheme certificate, including results from surveillance visits must be made available on request.

The fact that a core may separate is not, on its own, evidence that no edge sealant has been used or a lack of bond between layers. It may be due to damage during coring. Any investigation into bond should consider risk mitigation to avoid damage during the sampling and test preparation process.

NG7 Rigid and modular roads

NG7.1 Reinstatement methods

- 1) The requirements of this Code apply to all rigid roads up to 125 msa traffic flow. All rigid roads with existing traffic flows exceeding 30 msa must be identified by the authority, prior to the commencement of works, so that reinstatement requirements can be agreed.
- 2) Some modern concrete roads, constructed in accordance with current Government standards and specifications, may incorporate special design philosophies that are beyond the scope of this Code. Similarly, there may be other existing rigid road designs that will also require the use of particular reinstatement methods. Such roads must also be identified by the authority, prior to the commencement of works, so that reinstatement requirements can be agreed.

NG7.3 Concrete road slab reinstatement

For small excavations a proprietary C32/40 site-batched concrete may be used.

Considerations related to pavement details

Concrete pavements can be classified as jointed unreinforced concrete URC, jointed reinforced concrete (JRC) and continuous reinforced concrete pavement (CRCP). URC slabs are typically up to 5 m long, JRC slabs are typically between 5 m and 25 m, and CRCP has no joints but will develop fine transverse cracks at 2 m to 3 m intervals. Dowel bars are used to transfer traffic load across transverse joints and tie bars are used in longitudinal joints between lanes.

Reinforcement for long trenches with a length to width ratio greater than 3:2 is typically located around 60 mm below the concrete surface and comprises steel mesh (typically A393 for roads). Shallower (lower cover) reinforcement requires consideration of potential corrosion associated with chlorides. Sources of chlorides include the use of de-icing salt during winter maintenance. Guidance can be found in BS 8500 Part 1.

Additional reinforcement in the concrete surround, should be considered around ironwork and other features to reduce the risk of sympathetic cracking within the reinstatement.

It is envisaged that the requirement to include transverse joints within the reinstatement would be needed for works that cut across 5 or more concrete bays, or where there is a concern that the dowelled reinstatement will lock up the concrete pavement (i.e. prevent the

pavement from contracting and expanding normally) increasing the risk of cracking associated with loading.

NG7.5 Edge support and preparation

Using a grout into the back of the hole ensures that the material flows out around each bar, fully encasing it. Do not coat one end of the bar with grout or epoxy and then insert the bar into the hole – the air pressure inside the hole will force the grouting material back out of the hole, leaving a void around the bar.

For guidance, omission of dowels should take into consideration any load transfer requirements, geometry and size of the reinstatement.

Consideration of the use of low shrinkage concretes, including proprietary products for concrete repair, is recommended for discussion in this case.

NG7.8 Modular roads

- 1) When excavating in modular roads, the existing modules must be lifted carefully and stored for re-use.
- 2) It is particularly important to ensure that bedding and jointing sands should meet the performance demands in areas subject to heavy vehicular traffic.

NG8 Footways, footpaths and cycle tracks

NG8.2 Sub-base and binder course reinstatement

Excavations adjacent to roads

The most heavily stressed area of a road is usually the inside wheel track adjacent to the road edge. Depending on ground conditions, it is often necessary to support the road edge by providing lateral restraint within the adjoining footway, footpath, cycle track or verge. The most common form of edge support is a section of unbound or CBGM base material. This construction will most commonly be encountered when the horizontal distance between the edge of the undertakers' excavation and the edge of the road surface is less than the expected depth of cover of the undertakers' apparatus.

NG8.3 Surface reinstatement

High duty and high amenity areas

- 1) In high duty footways, the durability of the wearing surface is of prime importance so simple cosmetic matching of materials may not be adequate. Specific grades of material such as York stone modules or specific types of construction such as asphalt sand carpet may have been laid to give an acceptable performance under extreme conditions. In these cases, similar or equivalent grades of materials will need to be reinstated.
- 2) In high amenity footways, the cosmetic matching of materials at the wearing surface may be of primary importance with durability of secondary importance.
- 3) When identifying a source of materials for reinstatement in high duty and high amenity areas, it is important that the material is suitable and is readily available. Availability includes lead-in times for procurement and delivery of specific materials. Technical considerations may include potential for segregation, ease of compaction/installation and requirements for specialist training/accreditation.

Areas surfaced with bituminous materials

A wide range of surface treatments exists, commonly with less than 6 mm aggregate size. Where available, a similar surface finish will be reinstated. The surface course material may be reinstated using any of the allowed binder course or surface course materials, with a final surface treatment applied as soon as practicable following the laying of the permanent surface course.

Certain types of PMMA are sometimes used as a footway surfacing material for appearance and durability. Where an authority has a policy of using this material and reinstating with it, it is reasonable to expect the undertaker to comply with this. However, the cost of small quantities of PMMA is disproportionate to the size of the reinstatement and can result in significant wastage. Consequently, it is not unreasonable for an undertaker to wish to compile a programme of such works to achieve an efficient use of resources. Therefore, an authority should expect such work to be programmed so that sites requiring PMMA are batched to produce a package of work.

Areas constructed in concrete material

- 1) In general, reinstatements in a concrete footway, footpath or cycle track should match the existing surfacing as closely as is practicable.
- 2) Generally, the use of all flexible permanent reinstatements in overlaid concrete, PMMA, sand carpet or other derivative surfaces etc., has proven to be entirely adequate in practice.

NG9 Verges and unmade ground

NG9.1

General

There are no technical restrictions within the SROH on plant suitability for excavation in verges and unmade ground. Excavation plant for micro trenching may be used (e.g. see S6.6); however, the reinstatement requirements are in accordance with S9.

NG10 Compaction requirements

NG10.1

Introduction

- 1) Research has shown that failure to operate and maintain compaction equipment in accordance with manufacturer's schedules and recommended practices is likely to result in inadequate compaction with serious implications for the short-term performance of individual structural layers and the long-term integrity of the entire reinstatement.
- 2) All compaction equipment covered by this Code must be frequently checked, adjusted and maintained as necessary in accordance with the manufacturer's recommended practices to ensure that the manufacturer's recommended operating frequency is maintained throughout each compaction operation.
- 3) All compaction equipment covered by this Code must be used in accordance with the manufacturer's recommended operating procedures.

NG10.2

Compaction of materials

Unbound granular and cohesive materials

For granular or cohesive materials, a vibrating roller may be unsuitable in small excavations because of the restricted manoeuvrability of the large heavy rollers required to achieve adequate levels of compaction with an acceptable number of passes.

Compaction of backfill is a requirement to mitigate the risk of long term settlement. However, definitive measurements for density are often relatively complicated and not necessarily suitable for regular monitoring of works in reinstatements. These test methods include nuclear density testing (BS 1924-2).

There are standard tests available that may be used to measure performance (which can be correlated with adequate compaction/density). The main test methods are:

- Lightweight deflectometer to BS 1924-2 for soils, unbound mixtures and HBMs.
- California Bearing Ratio to BS 1377-4 for soils.

There are other tests methods available not covered by British Standards such as:

- Ground probing radar
- Surface wave propagation

- Panda penetrometer
- Clegg impact soil tester

In case of dispute about compacting backfill, the order of preference is definitive measurement and then standard tests (British Standards). The other test methods are limited in suitability dependent on their established correlation for the materials being tested.

Bituminous mixtures

- 1) With some combinations of compaction plant and certain types of bituminous mixtures, if compaction is continued as the material approaches its maximum density, the following may result:
 - a) The migration of fines or binder to the surface.
 - b) The development of shear surfaces and or crushing of aggregates.
- 2) Provided that the material has been laid and compacted within the appropriate temperature range, fewer passes will be required when any signs of distress become apparent.
- 3) Asphalt maximum density values, used in the calculation of air voids content, are specific to particular asphalt mixtures incorporating constituents from specific sources. Any variation in mix proportions or constituents requires the maximum density to be re-established.
- 4) Although consistent asphalt supply may allow an established maximum density for a particular mixture and source to be used for some time in routine situations, the definitive method to be used in the event of dispute will require the maximum density to be determined for the mixture actually used. The maximum density may be determined from bulk samples, if available, or from material obtained from additional core samples.
- 5) When taking cores near surface apparatus, S10.2.10 requires a minimum clearance of 100 mm to avoid damaging the apparatus or structure it is bedded on. However, it is possible that some surface apparatus may have wider than normal flanges and there may be instances where a greater clearance is required to avoid damage. If doubt exists, liaison with the owner of the apparatus should be undertaken in advance.
- 6) Where more than two cores are taken. One can be used for determination of maximum density value (BS EN 12697-5) and the remaining cores must be used for bulk density determination using the wax sealing method. This is the preferred method. Provision for the alternative sealing methods (e.g. the Corelok system) is included for when only a single core is available. This is done on the basis that removal of wax post-determination of air voids, and pre-determination of bulk density can be problematic.

As general guidance on air voids testing, it is important that care is taken to prevent damage to the specimen whilst sealing it. The seal must cover the specimen entirely, including the voids that technically form part of its volume. It is equally important to prevent the sealing material from penetrating any internal voids or creating voids between

the seal and the specimen or in seal folds. Trimming the bottom of a core sample may be done to avoid testing voided material compacted against unbound material. However, this can only be done if the thickness of the layer (after trimming) is still within the layer thickness specification.

Testing aged asphalt surfacing will not always give results representative of the as-built air voids condition. For guidance, air void measurements on reinstatements over 5 years old should not be relied on for accurate determination of the as-built air voids condition.

Modular surfacing materials

Depending on the size and type of paving module to be laid, and the extent of the area to be surfaced etc., the use of additional mechanical compaction may become necessary.

NG10.3

Equipment operation and restrictions

- 1) A single pass of any compaction plant is deemed to be completed when the foot, roll or plate of the compactor has impacted the entire surface area of the layer.
- 2) Where the excavation width is more than 50 mm greater than the foot, roll or plate width (i.e. side clearances between the compacting surface and the walls of the excavation exceed 25 mm per side), two or more traverses of the compaction device will be required to ensure coverage of the entire surface and all will be deemed to constitute a single pass.
- 3) Compaction plant should be steered along a line offset from that steered on the previous pass so that alternate passes are run close in to each side wall of the excavation.
- 4) Small items of compaction plant will frequently be required and additional provisions must be considered for use in trenches of less than 200 mm wide, small excavations and other areas of restricted access. In general, lightweight vibrotampers and poletampers are capable of achieving the same degree of compaction as the heavier items of plant specified in A8. However, small plant is usually not self-advancing and therefore more difficult to operate effectively.

Hand rammers

- 1) Hand rammers may be used for initial tamping of fine fill material or immediately adjacent to street furniture, reinstatement edges etc.
- 2) In all cases, full machine compaction complying with A8 will normally be applied immediately after the required thickness of material has been built-up. However, hand ramming alone may be necessary around standpipes and other isolated fixed features.

Percussive rammer

- 1) A percussive rammer is deemed to be a hand-held or pedestrian guided machine in which an electric, pneumatic or hydraulically operated reciprocating mechanism acts on a plate or 'foot'.

- 2) Percussive rammers may only be used to provide full machine compaction in areas where restricted access prevents the effective use of conventional compaction equipment.

Vibrotamper

- 1) A vibrotamper is deemed to be a free-standing, pedestrian guided machine in which a reciprocating mechanism, driven by an integral engine or motor, acts on a spring system through which oscillations are set up in a base plate or 'foot'.
- 2) Vibrotampers may be operated at reduced speed, for the first pass only, with cohesive materials.
- 3) Vibrotampers are not preferred for any permanent surface course application or any other application involving a layer thickness of less than 50 mm.

Vibrating rollers

- 1) A vibrating roller is deemed to be a self-propelled pedestrian steered machine with a means of applying mechanical vibration to one or more rolls.
- 2) Vibrating rollers should be operated in the lowest available gear, except for the first pass which should be at maximum forward speed.
- 3) All compaction passes should be carried out with full vibration, except for the first pass which should be carried out without vibration in order to nip in the material adjacent to the reinstatement edges and to prevent uneven displacement of material within the remainder of the reinstatement area.
- 4) Vibrating rollers are the preferred method of compaction for all permanent surface courses.
- 5) The use of twin drum rollers is preferred to single drum for compacting bituminous mixtures and will improve the quality of the permanent surface course. However, single drum vibrating rollers are permitted, as detailed in A8.

Vibrating plate compactors

- 1) A vibrating plate compactor is deemed to be a pedestrian guided plate equipped with a source of vibration consisting of one or more rotating, eccentrically weighted shafts.
- 2) Vibrating plate compactors should be operated in the lowest available gear, except for the first pass which should be at maximum forward speed.

Other compaction equipment

Compaction plant not referenced in A8, including machine-mounted, modified and other alternative compaction equipment, may be permitted for compacting reinstatement materials in accordance with the following relevant requirements:

- 1) Machine-mounted compactors

A machine-mounted compactor is deemed to be any compaction equipment that is mounted as an attachment or accessory to the chassis or front or rear booms of an excavator, tractor, skid-steer vehicle or other proprietary vehicle, for the purposes of compaction.

All machine-mounted compactors, whether integral to the vehicle design or on special attachments, should be operated in accordance with the recommendations of the compactor or attachment manufacturer, to the relevant compaction procedure required by A8. However, other operational variables should also be considered prior to the operation of such plant as follows:

a) Compactor downforce

The total downforce will vary depending upon the weight of the vehicle chassis or compactor frame, and any additional downforce applied by hydraulic rams etc. However, changes in the configuration of any vehicle, by the addition or removal of other accessories etc, changes in the width of the vibrating foot, roll or plate etc, movement of any boom resulting in a significant change of loading geometry or outreach etc, attaching of the compactor to other vehicles of differing types or weights etc, can all result in a significant reduction of compactive performance that is seldom apparent. All operators should be aware of the potential reduction in compactive performance resulting from such changes in configuration.

b) Applied downforce

The mounting of compaction equipment to the front loader arms of an excavator, where the downforce is sensibly limited by the lifting of the front wheels, is preferred. All compactors mounted to the backhoe of an excavator should be fitted with a downforce-limiting device, correctly set, or with a simple indicating device allowing the amplitude to be estimated.

c) Compactor set-up

Where vibration frequency or amplitude, or any other parameter affecting the dynamic output of a compactor is expected to be adjusted on a routine basis, all parameters should be set in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations unless specific testing, meeting the requirements of NG1.6 (4), has shown other settings to be at least as effective.

2) Modified compaction equipment

Modified compaction equipment must include any proprietary vibrotamper, vibrating roller, vibrating plate compactor, percussive rammer or other compaction plant that has been adapted, converted, revised or otherwise changed from the original manufacturer's specification, resulting in a significant change to the original configuration, dimensions, operational weight or power output.

Modified compaction equipment is acceptable provided it is operated in accordance with compaction procedures meeting the following requirements:

- a) The original manufacturer must provide written confirmation that the modified compaction equipment, operated in accordance with the original compaction procedure, is capable of achieving the same degree of compaction as any other option permitted in A8, or
- b) A revised compaction procedure is developed in accordance with the requirements of NG1.6.

3) Alternative compaction equipment

Alternative compaction equipment must include all other compaction devices not specifically permitted within NG10.3. Alternative compaction equipment may be permitted, provided it is operated in accordance with compaction procedures developed in accordance with the requirements of NG1.6 (4).

NG11 Ancillary activities

NG11.1 Traffic signs, road markings, studs and verge markers

General

In the interests of safety, particularly for people with disabilities, all traffic signs, road markings, studs and verge markers removed during the course of the works should be replaced immediately following completion of works.

NG11.2 Street furniture and special features

Similarly, all street furniture, tactile paving and any other special features removed during the course of works should be replaced immediately following the completion of works.

NG11.3 Traffic sensors etc.

- 1) Examples of sensors include ice warning sensors, buried queue and traffic detectors, other electronic detectors and various data collection devices.
- 2) The replacement of some traffic sensors may require the use of specialist contractors.

NG11.4 Water-related matters

Water egress (street surface and utility apparatus)

- 1) If water issues from the street surface or an undertaker's apparatus, the authority must initiate an investigatory works procedure to determine the cause and source of the water egress. Before starting investigatory work, the authority should contact any undertakers it believes may be responsible for the egress of water. Undertakers must cooperate with the authority in its investigation and may take trial holes and check apparatus for water leakage or surcharge through the apparatus, ducts and surround to the apparatus.
- 2) If, following the investigation, the authority has reasonable cause to believe that water egress is caused by or associated with the undertaker's apparatus, remedial measures must be agreed between the authority and the undertaker and carried out at the undertaker's cost. In the absence of agreement between the authority and the undertaker, liability for any damage must be determined in accordance with section 82 of the Act (Liability for any damage or loss caused).

Ironwork and apparatus

Access covers, frames and surround

- 1) The access surround is a critical feature because of the load transfer and point loads impacting on the fixed feature and as a potential point of weakness. It is therefore important that the surround is constructed to adequately withstand and transfer the applied loads.
- 2) The access surround should be of sufficient width to enable adequate compaction if constructed in an asphaltic material or a flowable material.

Reinstatements around small features

To compact PCSM the width of trim back is the width of the frame base plus the width of the compaction tool sole plate plus 30 mm. Typically, a frame that has a 150 mm flange will require 350 mm width of trim back to accommodate a compaction tool sole plate of 150 mm.

NGA2 Key to materials

NGA2.0

Introduction

For guidance on the terminology for asphalt mixtures refer to PD6691.

If risks associated with hand-laying of asphalt with highly modified PMBs are not mitigated, they can lead to problems including failure at joints and surface fretting. If in doubt, seek advice from the material supplier to determine if the material is suitable for hand-lay.

NGA2.1

Hot rolled asphalt (HRA) mixtures

- 1) HRA design mixtures give better resistance to deformation where queuing of heavy traffic is likely to occur and may also be more economical to lay.
- 2) Type C mixtures use fine aggregate of a coarser grading than Type F mixtures – usually associated with the use of crushed rock fines. Such mixtures tend to be stiffer and are less well suited to the reinstatement of small excavations.

Surface course mixtures

The advantage of using HRA 30/10F 100/150 is that this mixture can be used in footways, footpaths, cycle tracks and the carriage way. The other HRA options are limited in application.

Special care should be taken when using high stone content HRA (HRA 55/14 and HRA 50/10) to comply with texture depths.

The use of HRA 30/10 F surf is especially convenient when the reinstatement extends into road types 3 or 4, as the same material can be used for the whole surface.

NGA2.2

Stone mastic asphalt (SMA) mixtures

General

- 1) SMA is a high stone content, gap graded material where the voids between aggregate particles are essentially filled with a bitumen-rich mortar.
- 2) SMAs are very rich in bitumen to the extent that measures have to be taken to prevent bitumen from draining out of the mix during transport. Most commonly bitumen drainage is prevented by adding polymer modifiers or cellulose fibre.

- 3) True SMA is intended to be virtually impermeable and has very good resistance to deformation because of its stone-to-stone structure. The level of texture depth achieved is largely a function of the material design, texture depth achieved is therefore likely to be more consistent than with HRA, where the application rate and the embedment of the surface applied coated chippings is critical.

Specification

- 1) There is a European Standard for SMAs, BS EN 13108-5 and, in the UK, a Published Document PD6691 “Guidance on the use of BS EN 13108 Bituminous mixtures – Material specifications”.
- 2) There are also proprietary mixes that fit the generic description of an SMA.
- 3) Product Acceptance Scheme approved thin surface course systems may also comply with the HAUC requirements but there is no guarantee. Some Product Acceptance Scheme approved materials can have void contents in excess of that permitted in this Code. Purchasers should make it clear to suppliers that the work has to comply with the air void specification.

Transport

- 1) As with all asphalt materials it is important that temperature loss is minimised during transport, handling and storage to allow effective placement and compaction. The high bitumen content of mixtures means that provided material temperatures remain elevated, then compaction is relatively easy.
- 2) Transporting should comply with the requirements of this Code and BS 594987.
- 3) To minimise the risk of segregation and temperature loss it is preferable to use the material direct from the delivery vehicle or hot box. Material should never be tipped on to adjacent surfaces for use sometime later.

Preparation

- 1) Preparation should comply with this Code and BS 594987. A polymer-modified bond coat is preferable when using SMA.

Laying

- 1) Placement of the SMA should be done in such a way as to avoid segregation of the mix. Where possible this is to be accomplished by careful use of a shovel. The use of a rake is to be avoided. Care must be taken with the use of some “hot boxes” as these can also cause segregation of mixes through the discharge augers.
- 2) Areas showing segregation should be removed as these are not acceptable at any time.

- 3) Where initial skid resistance of >40 SRV is required (all carriageway applications) or in areas where equestrian usage is likely, the surface should be gritted using a clean, dry, crushed quartzite, or a comparable very hard angular aggregate, to a grading similar to that shown in Table NGA2.1. Alternatively, a 3 mm steel slag should be applied evenly to the surface during the initial rolling, i.e., whilst the material is still warm. The rate of application should be set to provide about 80% surface coverage (approximately 1000 g/m²). Where the authority uses a lightly coated grit for the treatment of SMA this may also be suitable.
- 4) After final rolling all surplus aggregate should be removed before the reinstatement is opened to traffic.
- 5) It is important that the application of grit should not reduce compliance with any texture depth requirement.

Table NGA2.1 Recommended aggregate grading for gritting SMA surfaces

BS test sieve:	% passing
6.3 mm	100
5.0 mm	95-100
3.35 mm	66-90
1.18 mm	0-20
600 µm	0-8
0.063 mm	0-1.5

Compaction

- 1) Compaction of the material is best carried out using a smooth wheeled roller. Vibration may be applied provided that this does not bring about excessive movement of the bitumen to the surface of the layer, i.e. “bleeding”. On narrow reinstatements compaction equipment in accordance with Table A8.3 may be used but care must be taken to ensure that there is no excessive loss of surface texture or bleeding.

NGA2.3

Asphalt concrete mixtures

Surface course mixtures

The use of higher binder content (B_{act}) in AC 6 and AC10 mixtures than those detailed in BSI PD 6691 Table B14 and B15 has been included to provide options for mixtures that have enhanced workability and reduce risks associated with air voids non-compliance. Care should be taken to avoid loss of texture or reduced resistance to rutting associated with an excessive increase in binder content. Liaison with the asphalt supply chain is recommended to optimise the benefits of adopting this type of material. It is the future intention to include specific provision for these mixtures in BSI PD 6691.

NGA2.7

Structural layer thickness tolerances

Excessive layer thicknesses of HRA surface course can lead to localised rutting likely to exceed the surface profile performance requirements set out in S2.2.

NGA2.9

Bituminous laying temperatures

To achieve acceptable air voids, most materials require greater compactive effort as the temperature approaches the lower limit. Additives are available that can be used to assist compaction at lower temperatures.

NGA8 Compaction requirements

NGA8.3

Bituminous mixtures

Table NGA8.1 provides guidance for compaction procedures that may be capable of achieving the specified air voids values.

Table NGA8.1 Compaction requirements for bituminous mixtures				
Compaction plant and weight category	Bituminous mixtures			
	Minimum passes/lift for compacted lift thickness up to			
	40 mm	60 mm	80 mm	100 mm
Vibrotamper 50 kg minimum	5#	7#	NR	NR
Vibrating roller Single drum 600-1000 kg/m 1000-2000 kg/m 2000-3500 kg/m Over 3500 kg/m	10 6 5 4	12 10 7 6	NR NR 8 7	NR NR NR NR
Twin drum 600-1000 kg/m 1000-2000 kg/m Over 2000 kg/m	5 4 3	7 5 4	NR 6 4	NR 8 6
Vibrating plate 1400-1800 kg/m ² Over 1800 kg/m ²	6 3	NR 6	NR 6	NR 8
All above plant	For Maximum and Minimum compacted lift thickness Table A2.5			
Alternative compaction plant for areas of restricted access (including small excavations and trenches less than 200 mm width)				
Vibrotamper 25 kg minimum	Minimum of 6 compaction passes			
Percussive Rammer 10 kg minimum	Maximum of 75 mm compacted lift thickness			
Notes for Table NGA8.1: 1) NR = Not Recommended 2) # = Vibrotamper not recommended on permanent surface course of trenches > 500 mm width 3) Twin drum vibrating rollers are preferred for compaction of bituminous mixtures 4) Single drum vibrating rollers are vibrating rollers providing vibration on only one drum 5) Twin drum vibrating rollers are vibrating rollers providing vibration on two separate drums				

NGA9 Alternative reinstatement materials (ARMs) and alternative technologies (ATs)

Promoters of ARMs and ATs are likely to be undertakers, contractors or manufacturers of proprietary products, plant or equipment. However, the benefits of ARMs and ATs extend to a wide range of stakeholders with positive impacts on safety, congestion, the environment, the asset and the wider benefits of efficient working.

The SROH also includes provision for Product Acceptance Schemes. Where appropriate ARMs and ATs should be developed with a view to being covered under a Product Acceptance Schemes and/or included within a subsequent revision of the SROH. For guidance, the process for obtaining a Product Acceptance Scheme certificate should apply the level of safety, practical and technical rigour that is applied when assessing ARMs and ATs.

NGA9.1

Introduction

Treated materials for fill (TMF) covers a range of materials that are treated before use. The purpose of the treatment is improvement, not necessarily stabilisation. Improvement includes treating wet and/or cohesive materials to enable placement and compaction. The performance characteristics of TMF are lower than SMR and are based on their mechanical performance post immersion in water (soaking). This means the performance of the TMF (SMF Class B to D) is typically dictated by the nature of the compacted soil and aggregate mix. SMF Class A could either be a granular material similar to the above, or a predominately fine-grained material including clay that has been stabilised. Particular care and attention is required to ensure it is a stabilised product (see description under SMR).

TMF may be trialled for use as surround to apparatus, backfill and/or sub-base. If used as a surround to apparatus, particular care is required to avoid damage during placement and compaction.

Non flowable structural material for reinstatement (NFSMR) is an SMR designed to provide a stabilised product. Stabilisation is a process that obtains a homogenous mixture of soil and/or graded granular material using treating agents and, optionally, water. When properly compacted, it significantly changes the characteristics of the material in a way that renders it stable, particularly with respect to the action of water and frost.

Flowable structural material for reinstatement (FSMR) is an SMR designed to provide a flowable product that hardens during curing. It does not require compaction.

Structural material for reinstatement (SMR) may be trialled for use as surround to apparatus, backfill, sub-base, base and/or binder (subject to road category). If used as a surround to apparatus, particular care is required to avoid any damage during placement and compaction.

HBMs have an extensive track record in highways in the UK going back to civils works in the 1960s and include a wide range of different constituents and categories of performance. A10 HBMs are most akin to NFSMR; including an upper limit on strength. However, standardised requirements; including constituents, test methods, testing regimes, mixture and production control requirements apply to HBM. These requirements mean that A10 HBMs do not require an A9 trial and are only typically achieved with static production facilities (see A10).

The mixture test requirements for SMR and TMF are not suitable for all material types and applications. An example of non-suitability is bituminous based mixtures (asphalt) which are classified based on a different suite of testing than that included for SMR and TMF. Reference should be made to the appropriate British Standards (BS) and/or European (BS EN), and this Code for materials proposed as ARMs that do not fall under the SMR and TMF categories.

Using the example of an ARM which is a bituminous based mixture, it is anticipated that reference would be made to standards including those for aggregate (BS EN 13043), bitumen (BS EN 12591 or BS EN 14023 for polymer modified bitumen), mixture (BS EN 13108), UK specific guidance (e.g. PD6691) and British Standard specifications (e.g. BS 594987).

For these materials a higher level of technical input and expertise is anticipated in the development and support of ARMs through the A9 process.

NGA9.2

General requirements for ARMs and ATs

Mix formulations are based on the constituents (including soil/aggregate, binder and water), mix proportions (including grading or pulverisation limits) and production tolerances. The mix formulation typically requires adjustment during works for variables such as water and binder addition. This is common to a wide range of construction materials and is required to accommodate differences in workability due to variations in internal factors (e.g. variation in feedstock) and external factors (e.g. environment and temperature). These adjustments are requirements of production control to achieve the end product performance requirements contained in A9. Adjustments that may be considered significant and outside of this mix formulation adjustment include changing the type of binder(s) from that used in the mix design, and adjustment to binder above or below the limits established during the design testing.

There is a limited number of scenarios where continuity of drainage is a consideration when selecting reinstatement materials, especially backfill

and sub-base. An example of this may include steep areas of road with water flowing in the foundation layers. A reinstatement cutting across this pathway, could in theory create a dam resulting in water washing materials away or creating a seepage line. SMRs have relatively low permeability owing to their physical nature. Therefore, recommendations to consider use of pea gravel in a geotextile rap are included in A9. For context, unbound mixtures (for example GSB1) are not necessarily free draining so the same consideration may be applied to their use.

- 6) SMRs have end product requirements that include crushing strength. They also have a performance requirement to be suitable for overlay with subsequent layers in the reinstatement. Depending on the nature and scenario where an SMR is used, it may perform well enough to be overlaid before the development of the minimum required crushing strength (see Table A9.1). If required, this potential may be established during the A9 approval process. This can be defined by the immediate bearing index for NFSMR which has mechanical interlock (see A10). Alternatively, this can be defined by a minimum crushing strength and/or period of time. Both should be linked to in situ curing of the material. It is important that the trials for this establish that overlay prior to full strength gain does not adversely damage the material versus its end product requirements (see Table A9.1).

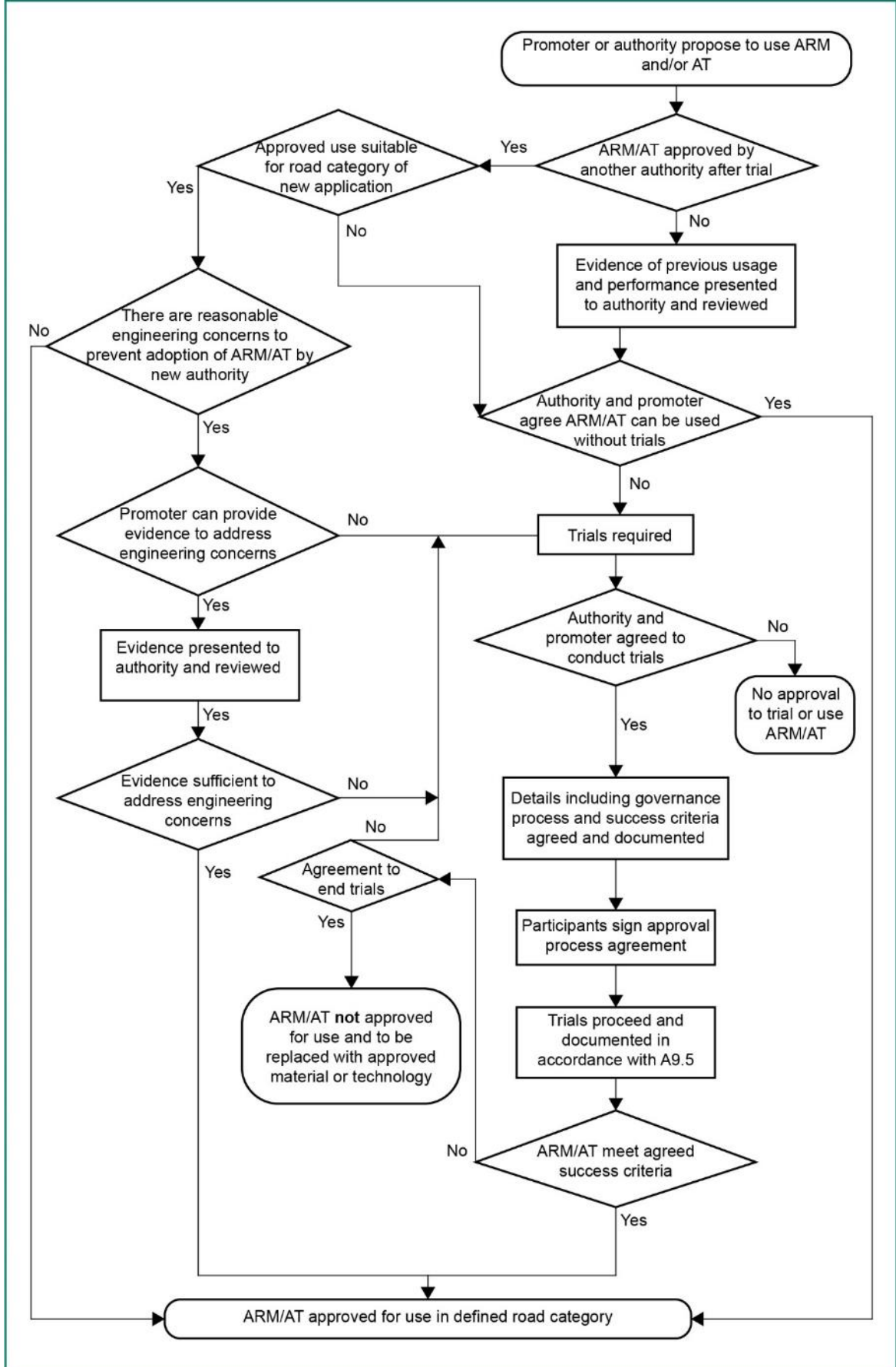
NGA9.5

Outline scheme for the approval trials

Introduction

Figure NGA9.1 shows a flow chart describing the approval procedure for ARMs and ATs.

Figure NG9.1 Approval procedure for trials



Engineering concerns include factors that indicate there is a reasonable challenge to the assumption of successfully transferring an ARM or AT into a new authority area. The starting point for this is that the ARM or AT has been approved, and evidence from the trials demonstrate compliance with the requirements of A9 and that the ARM or AT is suitable to be used in a new authority area. Engineering concerns may mean additional trials or validation data sets are required to address the points raised.

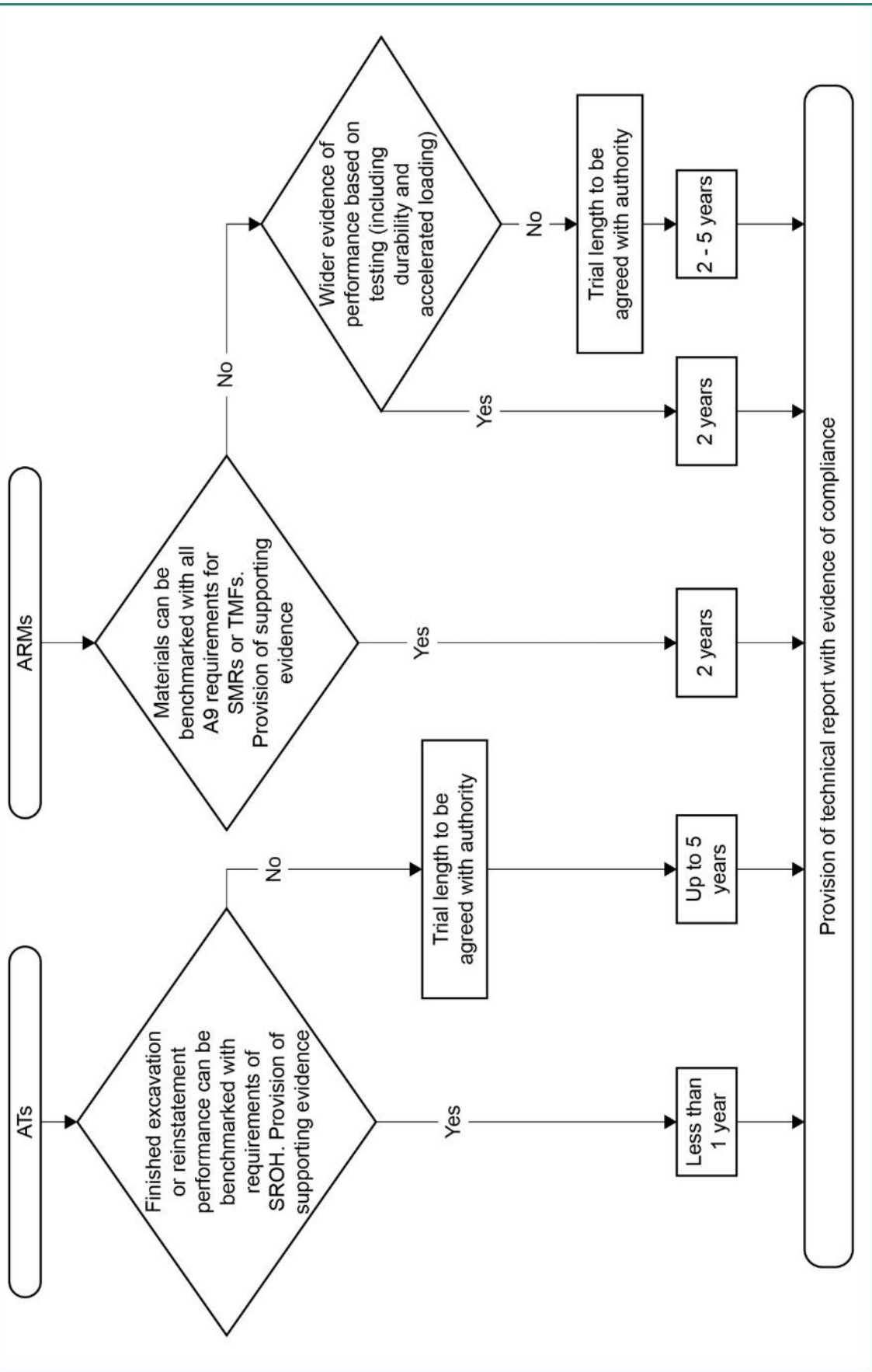
Examples of reasonable engineering concerns include regional variation in feedstock that is outside of a mix design process (e.g. proportions of high plasticity clay and/or chalk), nature of the constituents (e.g. high organic content in peat and/or alluvial clays), rounded/sub round gravel content etc), and condition of the constituents (e.g. areas with high water tables). The above reasonable engineering concerns are not barriers to the use of ARMs or ATs, but they are specific conditions which if not previously encountered could result in different outcomes i.e. they are technical risks. Therefore, it is reasonable to challenge the requirement for additional trials for validation purposes, and/or the applicability to a specific area. Further, it is important to differentiate between global engineering concerns for an area and potential local concern within an area which may restrict widespread application.

General requirements, special considerations and duties of parties in the approval trial

General requirements for approval trial

Figure NGA9.2 shows how to select the appropriate trial duration depending on the type of innovation proposed (technology or material) and the type of material and the supporting evidence provided.

Figure NG9.2 Trial type and length



Suggested information for inclusion in approval trial agreement

Example of information to be provided:

Definition of the trial, to include details (as required) of:

- Material;
- Method;
- Process;
- All participants
- Track record of use or similar

A) Type and location of the trial sites (if required):

Number of trial sites required to comply with the approval process. Are they to be routine utility excavation or excavations for trial purposes?

Road category or footway/footpath/cycle track classification.

B) Positioning of trial site

Position of reinstatement within the road e.g. within n/s wheel track

Either:

C) Material details and material preparation

Mix design, binder details, additives, dependencies related to on site conditions.

Details of batching, mixing, transport and placement procedures.

Weather protection, etc.

And/or:

D) Method and/or process details

Details of method and/or process to be adopted, reference to relevant plant and equipment, etc.

E) Quality Assurance and control process

The details of site testing and assessment carried out to confirm suitability and compliance.

Details of retrospective and ongoing testing and inspection criteria.

Types of samples and sampling frequencies for both the trial and for ongoing QA.

Contact details for accredited laboratories used to carry out development and assessment testing.

NGA10 Additional standard materials

NGA10.0

General

The SROH 3rd Edition referred to the MCHW for the use of HBMs outside the requirement for the A9 trial approval process. The MCHW does not give specific provision for HBMs within street works so appendix A10 has been created to directly call up the requirements from BS EN 14227 for this purpose.

Requirements contained in A10 for HBMs aim to be equivalent to that for bituminous and concrete products. This includes a quality control, inspection and testing. Hand mixed and other forms of production that do not meet these requirements can be progressed via the pre-existing A9 approval trials.

NGA10.2

Hydraulically bound materials (HBMs)

Laboratory mixture design procedure for HBM

The strength designation for HBMs is the R_c strength class in (MPa). In the example “C3/4” the:

- first number after C is the R_c (in MPa) for cylinders with a slenderness ratio of 2. In this example, it is 3 MPa.
- second number is the R_c for cylinders with a slenderness ratio of 1 and cubes. In this example, it is 4 MPa.
- slenderness ratio is defined as the height to diameter ratio of a cylindrical specimen.

The maximum strength class for A10 HBMs of C9/12 is included to mitigate potential issues related to reflective cracking through thin asphalt overlays.

In case of defective works or conflict, the in-situ wet density may be used to verify the strength of the HBM.

For testing freshly compacted material, nuclear density testing to BS1924-2 using a calibrated nuclear density gauge is the definitive method. The gauge must be used in the direct transmission mode of operation. The source rod must be lowered to within 25 mm of the bottom surface of the layer.

Each test at the location must consist of at least 3 measurements at 120 degrees to each other using the same source rod hole and the density taken as the average of the higher 2 results. Readings must be taken within two hours of completing compaction.

The in-situ density of HBM must be taken as the average of the wet density at five positions determined by the authority and must achieve no less than 95% of the nominal wet density of the design strength specimen. For testing hardened material, determination of the density of cored specimens will be required. Test methods for density of HBM are detailed in BS 1924-2.

NGA12 Reinstatement of modular surfaces

NGA12.1

General

- 1) For the purposes of this Code, modules where one side of the module is generally greater than 305 mm, are assumed not to rely on infill sand between the vertical faces of the modules. Instead, gaps between these modules are normally filled, or pointed, with a cement:sand mortar.
- 2) Modules with sides generally up to and including 305 mm rely on jointing sand between the vertical faces of the modules, normally affected through vibration methods, with jointing sand subsequently brushed into joints upon completion. It is essential that the jointing sand is kiln dried and free flowing. Sharp sand or building sand are not normally deemed to meet these requirements, although in some situations the use of sharp sand has been found to provide increased durability.
- 3) There may be a need to revisit sites to top up jointing sand following subsequent trafficking.
- 4) There may be a need to apply a sealant on sites subject to mechanical/vacuum sweeping.

NGA12.2

Examples of cement or concrete infills

- 1) Figures NGA12.1 to NGA12.3 provide guidance as to acceptable treatment of cement or concrete infills between the nearest practical module and the immediately adjacent fixed feature or boundary feature, as described in A12. Figures NGA12.1 and NGA12.2 show fillets in modules of one side greater than 305 mm, whilst Figure NGA12.3 shows fillets in modules with sides up to and including 305 mm.

NGA12.3

Examples of reinstatement of modular patterns

- 1) Priorities when selecting a suitable source or supplier are aspects of safety (e.g. skid/slip resistance), durability and aesthetics, in that preferred order. The criteria stated in A12.3.2 are prioritised primarily for aesthetic purposes and assume safety and durability have been satisfied.
- 2) Figures NGA12.4 to NGA12.6 provide guidance as to acceptable treatment of modular patterns in localised reinstatements immediately adjacent to fixed features or boundary features. The principle of an acceptable loss of local pattern is indicated, together with the use of

larger cut and/or shaped pavers, both leading to an improved aesthetic and structural arrangement of the modules within the reinstatement.

Figure NGA12.1 Extension of infill concrete - modules greater than 305 mm

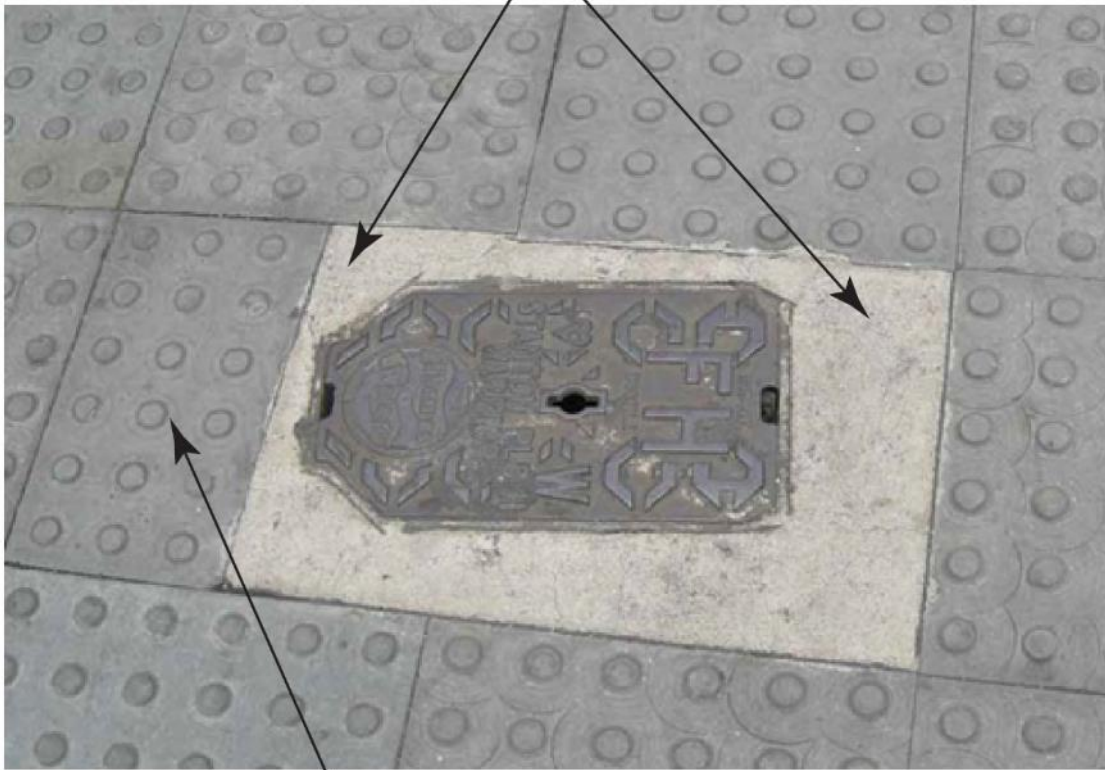
Infill concrete extended to nearest module to accommodate irregular shape of ironwork and avoid 'cutting' or 'trimming' of modules (modules of side greater than 305 mm in this example)



Maximum width of infill measured orthogonally from ironwork face increased to 200 mm (maximum) to accommodate irregular shape

Figure NGA12.2 Extension of infill concrete - modules greater than 305 mm

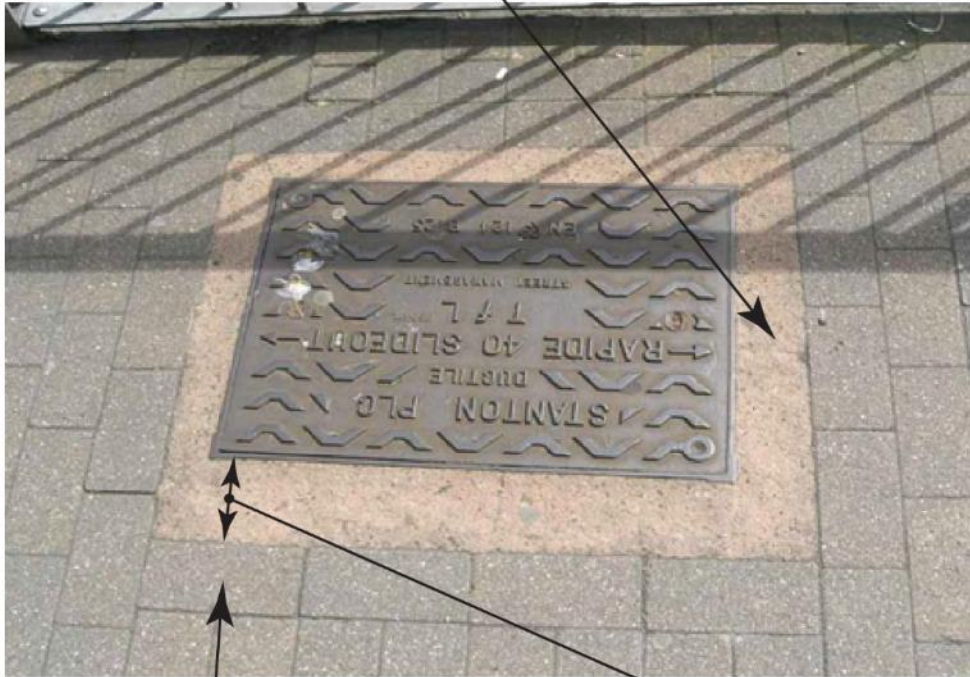
Infill concrete extended to nearest module to accommodate irregular shape of ironwork and avoid 'cutting' or 'trimming' of modules (modules of side greater than 305 mm in this example)



Use of varying width of infill limits 'cutting' or 'trimming' of existing surround modules (half-size in this example)

Figure NGA12.3 Extension of infill concrete – modules up to 305 mm

Use of varying width concrete to form an 'external' regular boundary shape (rectangular) with existing modules avoids 'cutting' or 'trimming' of existing surround modules



Infill concrete extended to nearest appropriate (full) module to accommodate orientation of ironwork and avoid 'cutting' or 'trimming' of modules to undesirably small sizes (modules of side up to 305 mm in this example)

Maximum width of infill measured orthogonally from ironwork face, is the full width of a module plus 25 mm (measured on the shorterst side)

Figure NGA12.4 Acceptable loss of module pattern – modules up to 305 mm

Use of cut 'half' blocks (100 mm x 100 mm) minimises apparent loss of local module/paver pattern (herringbone in this example)



Use of larger cut/shaped blocks leads to acceptable loss of local pattern (herringbone in this example). This is preferred to small and/or angular cut blocks otherwise necessary to maintain regularity of existing block paver pattern

Figure NGA12.5 Acceptable loss of module pattern – modules up to 305 mm

Use of grouped larger cut/shaped blocks leads to acceptable loss of local pattern (herringbone in this example). This is preferred to small and/or angular cut blocks otherwise necessary to maintain regularity of existing block paver pattern



Use of larger cut and/or shaped blocks leads to preferable arrangement of block pavers at the corners

Figure NGA12.6 Acceptable loss of module pattern – modules up to 305 mm

Use of cut 'half' blocks (100 mm x 100 mm) minimises apparent loss of local pattern (herringbone in this example)



Use of larger cut/shaped blocks leads to acceptable loss of local pattern (herringbone in this example). This is preferred to small and/or angular cut blocks otherwise necessary to maintain regularity of existing block paver pattern